

NGUYỄN THỊ CHI (Chủ biên)
NGÔ THỊ THANH HƯƠNG - ĐỒNG THỊ YẾN TRANG - THÁI QUANG TUÂN

HỌC TỐT TIẾNG ANH 10

(CHƯƠNG TRÌNH NÂNG CAO)



ĐHQGHN

0076

DC

011

000138



NHÀ XUẤT BẢN
ĐẠI HỌC QUỐC GIA HÀ NỘI

NGUYỄN THỊ CHI (Chủ biên)
NGO THỊ THANH HƯƠNG – ĐỒNG THỊ YẾN TRANG – THÁI QUANG TUÂN

HỌC TỐT
TIẾNG ANH

10
NÂNG CAO

NHÀ XUẤT BẢN ĐẠI HỌC QUỐC GIA HÀ NỘI

LỜI NÓI ĐẦU

Giống như tên gọi, cuốn *Học tốt Tiếng Anh 10 nâng cao* được thiết kế với mục đích giúp cho các em học sinh lớp 10 học môn Tiếng Anh – Nâng cao đạt kết quả tốt. Cuốn sách được thiết kế với 3 phần chính:

Phần 1: Hướng dẫn cách học các kĩ năng thực hành tiếng Anh bao gồm các kĩ năng nghe, nói, đọc và viết. Trong phần này, trên cơ sở các yêu cầu về kiến thức cần đạt của chương trình Tiếng Anh 10, những thủ thuật luyện tập bốn kĩ năng thực hành tiếng Anh được hướng dẫn rõ ràng với các ví dụ cụ thể, dễ hiểu và dễ thực hành.

Phần 2: Giải đáp và luyện mở rộng. Trong phần này gồm 2 phần:

- a. Lời giải cho các phần bài tập trong sách giáo khoa **Tiếng Anh 10** của tất cả các kĩ năng.
- b. Bài tập mở rộng. Các bài tập được thiết kế theo nguyên tắc củng cố và mở rộng theo yêu cầu về kiến thức ngôn ngữ và chủ đề của bài.

Phần 3. Lời giải của phần bài tập mở rộng

Nhóm tác giả hi vọng các em học sinh có được cuốn tài liệu tham khảo hữu ích để học tốt môn Tiếng Anh. Tuy nhiên, các tác giả mong muốn nhận được các ý kiến góp ý của các thầy giáo, cô giáo và các em học sinh để sách được hoàn thiện hơn và giúp các em học sinh học tiếng Anh dễ dàng và có kết quả tốt hơn.

Các tác giả

UNIT 1

SCHOOL TALKS

READING

Before you read

The two ways of learning shown in the pictures are:

Picture a: Studying in group or group work or team learning.

Picture b: Studying individually or individual learning.

Đáp án gợi ý:

- I prefer studying in a group because I can share my ideas with my friends. We can exchange our opinions, which helps us understand the lessons more clearly and completely.
- I prefer individual learning because I can work independently and have to try hard to find out the answers and solutions by myself. Besides, I won't be affected by my classmates.

Reading Text

Bài dịch gợi ý

HỌC NHÓM

1A. Các cuộc nghiên cứu cho thấy học sinh, đặc biệt là học sinh trung học phổ thông, và sinh viên đại học, có thể học được từ bạn bè cùng lớp nhiều như hoặc nhiều hơn là từ giáo viên hay sách giáo khoa. Khi học sinh, sinh viên học tập hiệu quả trong một nhóm có tính hỗ trợ lẫn nhau, kinh nghiệm đó có thể là một cách rất tích cực giúp nâng cao thành quả học tập và sự thỏa mãn với việc học. Phần dưới đây mô tả những hoạt động chủ yếu của một nhóm học tập.

(Chia sẻ bài vở đã ghi chép

Ngay sau giờ học, gặp gỡ ngay các bạn học để chia sẻ và trao đổi bài ghi chép. Có thể một bạn nào đó đã hiểu phần mà bạn chưa nắm rõ hoặc ngược lại.

Nghiên cứu

Khảo sát cho thấy nhiều học sinh, sinh viên chưa quen với việc nghiên cứu, nhất là việc sử dụng thư viện. Thành lập nhóm nghiên cứu là cách hữu hiệu để chuẩn bị cho những buổi thuyết trình các bài vở môn xã hội như Lịch sử, Địa lý, Văn học, và Kinh tế. Khi làm việc nhóm, bạn có thể cùng nhau tìm được nguồn thông tin, chia sẻ thông tin và nâng cao chất lượng bài vở của mình.

1Rà soát lại kết quả bài kiểm tra

Sau khi nhận kết quả bài kiểm tra, các thành viên của nhóm học tập có thể cùng nhau xem lại bài cá nhân để nhận dạng các lỗi sai và tìm được những câu trả lời 'mẫu' đạt điểm cao. Điều này có thể giúp bạn nâng cao chất lượng những bài kiểm tra hay bài làm sau này.

B. Tuy nhiên không phải tất cả các nhóm học tập đều thành công với nhau. Đôi khi việc học nhóm lại không hiệu quả vì bạn chưa biết cách thành lập nhóm cho đúng. Sau đây là vài gợi ý chiến lược để đạt hiệu quả học tập nhóm tối đa.

Tìm được đúng bạn cùng nhóm

Khi thành lập nhóm, hãy lưu ý tìm những bạn tích cực, tập trung trong giờ học, và có tinh thần đồng đội khi làm việc nhóm.

Thành lập nhóm có cả nam lẫn nữ

Thành viên nên bao gồm cả nam lẫn nữ, với những tính cách khác nhau. Sự đa dạng sẽ gom lại những kinh nghiệm sống, cách suy nghĩ và phương pháp học tập khác nhau cho nhóm của bạn. Tuy nhiên, chỉ chọn những bạn học cùng đồng đội có cùng sở thích và phong cách.

Duy trì nhóm ít người

Với nhóm ít người có nhiều cơ hội trao đổi trực diện và dễ họp nhóm sau giờ học hơn nhiều.

Tóm lại, ngày nay làm việc nhóm là một trong những hoạt động được đánh giá cao nhất ở học đường và cơ quan.

(Trích dịch từ 'Tuyển tập' của Linda Lee và Erik Gunderson.)

a) True/ False exercise:

Đáp án:

1. T One of the main purposes of the text is to encourage students to study in groups.
2. T Teams that include both boy and girl students will probably be more effective.
3. NI [Team learning helps save time doing homework]
4. F → You had better choose teammates with shared interests.
5. F → A small team allows more face-to-face interaction and is easier to get together.
→ A team of five people is better than a team of ten.

b) Reading comprehension:

Đáp án gợi ý:

1. Sharing notes right after class helps students get the information that they missed and understand the lessons more thoroughly.
2. A small group helps teammates have more face-to-face interaction, and get together outside of class more easily.
3. Having right teammates, forming teams with both genders, having small-size groups make a team successful. Some teams are more successful than others because they have effective strategies.

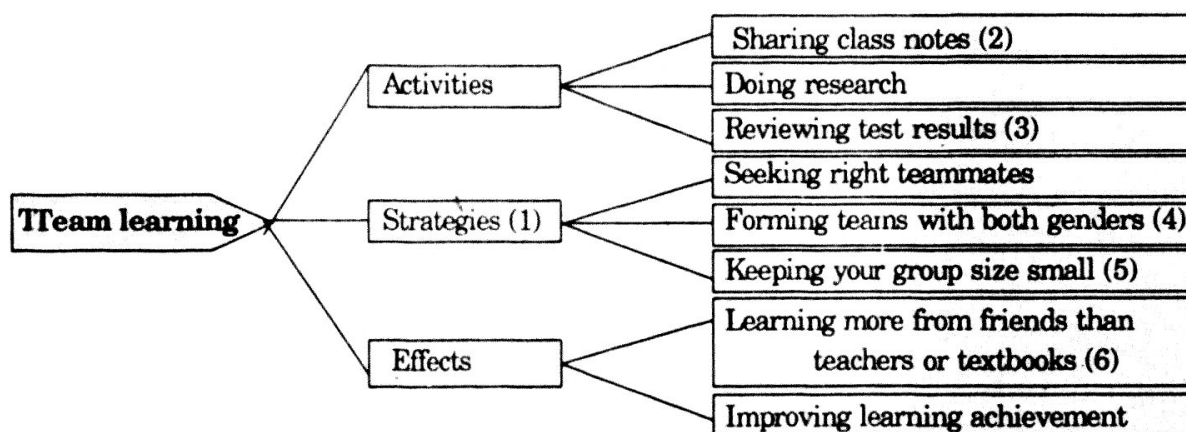
Or: Small-sized teams that comprise active, cooperative teammates of both genders are more successful than large groups of teammates that do not get on well with each other.

1. Yes, quite often. We often discuss the answers to questions, practice speaking and exchange opinions when doing the writing tasks.

Or: We rarely take part in team learning.

c) Summary Mapping:

Đáp án:



Posst-reading

1. Some important team learning activities are: sharing class notes, doing research, and reviewing test results.
2. Important strategies of team learning are: seeking right teammates, forming teams with both genders, and keeping group size small.
3. Team learning helps students learn from their friends and improve their achievements.

LISTENING

a) Pre-listening: Complete the sentences with the words and phrases in the box.

Đáp án:

1. Our teacher always sticks to rules. He is very strict.
2. Yesterday I missed the school bus because I overslept.
3. My father never hits me with a stick.
4. Jack used to live in the country and go to a village school.
5. He doesn't write with his right hand. He is left-handed.
6. I always feel nervous when my teachers ask me to recite my lessons in front of the class

Chú thích từ ngữ:

Strict	<i>ngghiêm khắđ</i>
Oversleep-overslept	<i>ngủ quên</i>
Left-handed	<i>thuận tay trái</i>
Recite	<i>trả bài học (đọc bài)</i>

b) While-listening: Conversation between Mr. Ba and his grandson, Nam, about his old school days.

Đáp án:

1. F → Mr. Ba started school when he was six.
2. T He studied in a bigger school in town when he was twelve.
3. T He is left-handed.
4. F → His teachers made him write with his right hand.
5. F → His teachers never gave him homework.

c) Listen to the conversation again and give short answers to the questions.

Đáp án:

1. He was six.
2. Because his teachers hit him on the fingers when he wrote with his left haand.
3. On foot.
4. Because he overslept and was late for school.
5. He was asked to write one hundred times the sentences: 'I must leave home early. I must not arrive late.'

SPEAKING

Talking about Likes and Dislikes

a) Discuss in groups:

- What is an ideal teammate/ friend like?
- Give two qualities each should have and two qualities each shouldn't have.

Suggested answer:

1. An ideal friend or teammate is a person who is sincere, sympathetic and helpful. We can share our feelings with them, ask them for advice, and get their help when needed.

2. An ideal friend is reliable, supportive and fun-loving.

An ideal teammate is active and attentive in class, cheerful and cooperative in group work.

	Should	Shouldn't
Thee ideal teammmate	- be helpful - be listening - be cooperative in working - have a good sense of humor	- be dominant or bossy - have contrasting working habits - be aggressive - have different interests
Thee ideal friend	- be reliable - be fun-loving - be helpful - be generous	- be rude - be jealous - be selfish - be too talkative

b) In pairs, tell your partner about the people or the school subjects you like or dislike.

Đáp án gợi ý:

Phuương: What's your favorite subject, Khang?

Khaang: I like Mathematics best. It seems difficult but interesting. How about you?

Phuương: I prefer English to mathematics. If we are good at English, we'll be able to read interesting stuff on the Internet, communicate with foreigners, learn lots of new things and understand new cultures. Well, English is an international language.

Khaang: I see. I'm not good at English, but I'm trying hard to improve my English. Anyway, I'd prefer Mathematics. I'm keen on figures.

.....

A. What kind of people don't you like working with?

B. I don't like working with people who have different interests from mine.

A. Neither do I. I think that it'll be difficult to come to an agreement.

Some useful expressions:

Likes:	Dislikes:
- o I enjoy + Verb-ing - o I am interested in... - o I am fond of... - o I am keen on...	- o I dislike... - o I can't stand... - o I hate...

c) Write five sentences about things you like doing most after class.

Đáp án gợi ý:

-- After class, I enjoy staying at home and listening to music.

-- I like playing table-tennis with my friends.

-- I am fond of computer games.

- My mother usually picks me up after class. Sometimes she takes me around Xuan Huong Lake and we stop at Thanh Thuy's for an ice-cream. That's what I like best.
- Tram, Phương and I often walk home after class. On our way home, we enjoy chatting and discussing about the school day's activities. That's a lot of fun.

WRITING

Writing a Narrative

a) Rearrange sentences:

Đáp án:

- Ba used to live in a village and his house was very far from school (3)
- When he was a fifth grader, he had to walk to school every day (4, 2)
- One morning he overslept (1)
- He hurriedly went to school, but was 15 minutes late (6, 8)
- Unfortunately, the teacher asked him to recite the history lesson (10)
- Being very tired, Ba forgot his lesson (7)
- As a result, the teacher asked him to write 100 times the sentences: "I must not be late for school," and "I must know my lessons well." (9)
- Since then, he was never late to school (5)

b) Write a story about school activities

Đáp án gợi ý:

It happened last year, when I was a ninth-grader. That was the first school year when we had to wear 'áo dài', and we often thought of silly jokes with them. Once, in our English class, I was sitting behind Lan and Tuyết, two classmates who looked very charming in their 'áo dài'. It suddenly dawned on me to tie the 'back flaps' of their two 'áo dài' together, just for fun. I didn't intend to play any tricks on my friends. Unfortunately, the teacher called Tuyết to the board. She immediately stood up, and several buttons of her 'áo dài' snapped off, because her 'back flap' was stuck. The whole class laughed noisily while Tuyết burst into tears. Our teacher got furious, and I felt very scared. Although I was punished severely and apologized to Tuyết heartily, I felt guilty and ashamed. I could not forget that incident, and swore never to play any stupid joke on anyone.

Chú thích từ ngữ:

It suddenly dawned on me

'back flap'

The buttons snapped off

Swear- swore-sworn

Tôi chợt nghĩ

tà (vạt) sau của áo dài

nút bấm bị bật ra

thề

LANGUAGE FOCUS

Word study

Word family:

Words that do **not** go with the word 'team': job, share.

Words that go with 'team':

Team interest

team spirit

team work

team game

team sports

team effort

GRAMMAR

Gerunds and infinitives

Use the gerund (verb + -ing)

after prepositions and phrasal verbs I'm very good *at* remembering names.

as the subject of a sentence

My father *has given up* smoking.

after some verbs, e.g. *hate, spend...*

Collecting stamps is my hobby.

I *enjoy* swimming.

Common verbs which take the gerund include:

avoid, consider, enjoy, hate, finish, like, love, mind, practice, spend, stop, suggest

Use the infinitive (To + base form of verb)

after adjectives

This problem is *difficult* to solve.

to express a reason or a purpose

I'm saving money *to buy* a mobile phone.

after some verbs, e.g. *want, need...*

She *decided* to leave early.

Common verbs which take the infinitive (with to) include:

(can't) afford, agree, allow, ask, decide, expect, fail, forget, help, hope, need, order,

offer, plan, pretend, promise, refuse, remember, seem, try, want, would like

These common verbs can take either the gerund or infinitive with no difference in meaning: begin, continue, prefer, start

e.g. The students start to discuss about the school subjects that they like.

The students start discussing about the school subjects that they like.

- These common verbs can take a gerund or an infinitive but the meaning is different: **forget, remember, stop, try...**

e.g. Try to finish this report in one hour (= make an effort to finish it in a short time)

Try doing yoga (= do it to see if you like it)

a) Put the verbs into the correct form

Đáp án:

1. I was very tired. I tried to keep my eyes open but I couldn't.
2. She told him to lock the door.
3. My father allowed me to use his camera.
4. I want to know the truth.
5. When I'm tired, I enjoy watching TV. It's relaxing.
6. It was a nice day, so we decided to go for a picnic.
7. I'm not in a hurry. I don't mind waiting.
8. We were hungry, so we suggested having dinner early.

b) Rewriting:

Đáp án gợi ý:

1. Students couldn't wait to see their new teacher.
2. I happened to see your sister yesterday.
3. Do you fancy going for a walk?
4. I tend to arrive at school five minutes early.
5. Peter can't stand getting up early in the winter.
6. My group carried on seeking information for our class presentation.
7. I'll never forget having visited Ha Long Bay.

A Friend defined from A to Z

Một người bạn định nghĩa qua 24 chữ cái...

- (A) Accepts you as you are - *Chấp nhận con người thật của bạn.*
- (B) Believes in "you" - *Luôn tin tưởng bạn.*
- (C) Calls you just to say "HI" - *Điện thoại cho bạn chỉ để nói "Xin chào".*
- (D) Doesn't give up on you - *Không bỏ rơi bạn.*
- (E) Envisions the whole of you - *Hình ảnh của bạn luôn ở trong tâm trí họ.*
- (F) Forgives your mistakes - *Tha thứ cho bạn mọi lỗi lầm.*
- (G) Gives unconditionally - *Tận tụy với bạn (không điều kiện)*
- (H) Helps you - *Giúp đỡ bạn.*
- (I) Invites you over - *Luôn lời cuốn bạn.*
- (J) Just "be" with you - *Tỏ ra "xứng đáng" với bạn, về phe bạn*
- (K) Keeps you close at heart - *Trân trọng bạn.*
- (L) Loves you for who are - *Yêu quý bạn bởi con người thật của bạn.*

- M) Makes a difference in your life - *Tạo ra khác biệt trong đời bạn.*
 N) Never judges - *Không bao giờ phán xét.*
 O) Offers support - *Là nơi nương tựa cho bạn.*
 P) Picks you up - *Vực bạn dậy khi bạn suy sụp.*
 Q) Quiets your tears - *Làm dịu đi những giọt lệ của bạn.*
 R) Raises your spirits - *Giúp bạn phấn chấn hơn.*
 S) Says nice things about you - *Nói những điều tốt đẹp về bạn.*
 T) Tells you the truth when you need to hear it - *Sẵn sàng nói sự thật khi bạn cần.*
 U) Understands you - *Hiểu được bạn.*
 W) Walks beside you - *Sánh bước cùng bạn.*
 X) Examines your head injuries - *"Bắt mạch" được những chuyện khiến bạn "đau đầu".*
 Y) Yells when you won't listen - *Hét to vào tai bạn mỗi khi bạn không lắng nghe.*
 Z) Zaps you back to reality - *Và thức tỉnh bạn khi bạn lạc bước.*

BÀI TẬP Củng Cố

UNIT 1

A. PHONETICS

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others in the same line.

- | | | | |
|---------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1. A. grades | B. mistakes | C. teams | D. activities |
| 2. A. missed | B. earned | C. shared | D. described |
| 3. A. gender | B. geography | C. strategy | D. together |
| 4. A. person | B. work | C. more | D. turn |
| 5. A. diverse | B. describe | C. type | D. review |

II. Choose the word whose stress pattern is different from the rest in each group.

6. A. research	B. locate	C. improve	D. succeed
7. A. success	B. member	C. interest	D. gender
8. A. membership	B. history	C. achievement	D. memories
9. A. instructor	B. performance	C. suggestion	D. strategy
10. A. diversity	B. economics	C. interaction	D. satisfaction

B. GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY

For each sentence choose the best answer (A, B, C, or D) to fill in the blank.

11. Thúy Hiền won the gold medal for her brilliant _____ in the Wushu contest.
 A. assignment B. activity C. performance D. experience

12. Our class monitor has a very strong _____.
A. individual B. individualism C. person D. personality
13. One of the most important things in one's career choice is job _____.
A. strategy B. satisfaction C. diversity D. achievement
14. This article is quite _____. Now I understand what a 'blog' is.
A. ineffective B. informative C. supportive D. cooperative
15. A learning team will be successful if the teammates _____ well with each other.
A. support B. understand C. interact D. perform
16. Western students are more familiar with doing _____ than our students.
A. research B. assignment C. cooperation D. cooperatively
17. Lan was praised by our history teacher for her _____ on Điện Biên Phủ Battle.
A. achievement B. description C. suggestion D. presentation
18. What _____ he writing when we came in?
A. is B. was C. does D. did
19. I phoned the restaurant _____ a table for tonight.
A. book B. booked C. booking D. to book
20. The boy spent all the evening _____ games on the computer.
A. play B. played C. playing D. to play
21. The workers hope _____ a salary raise next month.
A. getting B. to get C. accepting D. to accept
22. My mother has never learnt _____ a motorbike.
A. driving B. to drive C. riding D. to ride
23. The students plan _____ on a picnic in the Valley of Love.
A. going B. to go C. traveling D. to travel
24. _____ early on a sunny morning makes me feel good.
A. I wake up B. I woke up... C. Waking up D. To wake up
25. The teacher asked _____ the history lesson.
A. he recited B. him reciting C. him to recite D. him for reciting

C. READING COMPREHENSION

Read the following passage carefully.

The Internet and education

With the rise of the Internet, information technology is now beginning to have much more influence on education. Two areas which are becoming more and more significant are 'blogs' and 'wikis'.

The word 'blog' is short for 'weblog'. A blog is an online diary or 'log' of someone's life, thought, or opinions. Anybody can create their own 'blog' and

blogging is becoming extremely popular –type ‘blog’ into Google and you’ll get over 500 million results. For educational purposes, academics, teachers, and students create blogs as personal online study sites: places to work together and share information and ideas. Some universities even give their students and staff free space on a server to start their own blogs.

‘Wikis’ are websites where anyone can add content and make changes, so that the site becomes a group creation –‘wiki’ stands for ‘What I Know Is’. These sites can be a valuable source of information and opinion for students, though the information may not be totally accurate – some academics refuse to use them. Perhaps the best-known wiki is the online encyclopedia, Wikipedia, which has more than one million entries in over 100 languages. Wikipedia is working hard to make sure that its information is completely accurate, so students will be able to use it with confidence, and there’s no doubt that it is an incredible resource.

State whether the following are TRUE or FALSE according to the text

26. _____ Information technology is affecting education more than ever before.
27. _____ The word ‘blog’ comes from ‘weblog’.
28. _____ One should type into Google to create one’s own blog.
29. _____ A blog is a kind of diary or ‘log’ of someone’s life, thought, or opinions.
30. _____ Blogs are mostly used for educational purposes.
31. _____ Blogs can be used as personal online study sites for teachers and students.
32. _____ ‘Wiki’ is short for ‘Wikipedia’.
33. _____ The information on the ‘wikis’ are very reliable.
34. _____ Wikipedia is an online encyclopedia.
35. _____ Wikipedia is a helpful source of information.

D. WRITING

Make complete meaningful sentences with the following prompts.

36. Be effective/ team/ include/ boy/ girl students.

37. Brother/ enjoy/ meet/ new people/ want/ become/ tour guide.

38. They/ decide/ buy/ house/ so quickly/ now regret/ have bought it.

39. Mother/ promise/ not work/ my birthday/ not mind/ work on Saturday instead.

40. Form research team/ be/ effective way/ prepare/ class presentation/ some subjects.

ĐÁP ÁN

UNIT 1

A. PHONETICS

1. B. mistakes	2. A. missed	3. D. together	4. C. more	5. D. review
6. B. locate	7. A. success	8. C. achievement	9. D. strategy	10. A. divers

B. GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY

11. C. performance	12. D. personality	13. B. satisfaction	14. B. informativ
15. C. interact	16. A. research	17. D. presentation	18. B. was
19. D. to book	20. C. playing	21. B. to get	22. D. to ride e
23. B. to go	24. C. Waking up	25. C. him to recite	

C. READING COMPREHENSION

26. T 27. T 28. F 29. T 30. F 31. T
32. F 33. F 34. T 35. T

D. WRITING

Đáp án gợi ý:

36. To be effective, a team should include both boy and girl students.
37. My brother enjoys meeting new people and wants to become a tour guide.
38. They decided to buy the house so quickly that now regret having bought it.
39. My mother promised not to work on my birthday and doesn't mind working on Saturday instead.
40. Forming research teams is an effective way to prepare for class presentation of some subjects.

Unit 2

PEOPLE'S BACKGROUNDS

READING

Before you read

Match the names with the relevant information

. d	Nguyen Huu Canh was the founding father of Saigon
. g	Louis Pasteur developed the vaccine for preventing rabies.
. f	Yuri Gagarin was the first man in space.
. a	Ernest Hemingway wrote <i>The Old Man and the Sea</i> .
. h	Charles Dickens wrote <i>David Copperfield</i> .
. b	Walt Disney was the creator of Mickey Mouse.
. e	Nelson Mandela was the first black president of South Africa.
. c	Alexandre Yersin discovered Dalat.

Reading text

Bài dịch gợi ý

AI LÀ AI?

Louis Pasteur là một nhà hóa học người Pháp nổi tiếng toàn thế giới. Ông đã phát minh quy trình tiệt trùng và chế biến thuốc chủng ngừa một số bệnh trong đó có bệnh chó dại.

Khi ông qua đời vào năm 1895, ông đã trở thành vị anh hùng dân tộc và được tôn vinh nhiều mặt. Ông được truy điệu quốc tang ở Nhà thờ Đức Bà Paris. Tại Việt Nam có Viện Vắc xin Pasteur ở một vài thành phố lớn, và dân chúng có thể đến đó tiêm chủng ngừa một số bệnh khác nhau.

Tôn Thất Tùng là vị tiên phong trong phẫu thuật gan. Ông cũng là cha đẻ một kỹ thuật mới về phẫu thuật gan nay mang tên ông. Nhờ 'Phương pháp Tôn Thất Tùng', có thể hoàn thành một ca phẫu thuật gan từ bốn đến tám phút hay từ ba đến sáu tiếng như trước kia.

Nelson Mandela, nhà hoạt động chống chủ nghĩa phân biệt chủng tộc, đã giúp thành lập Đoàn Thanh niên của Đảng Đại hội Dân tộc Phi, một tổ chức hình thành đã lãnh đạo những cuộc biểu tình phản kháng ôn hòa của quần chúng chống lại chủ nghĩa phân biệt chủng tộc. Ông cũng đã đọc diễn văn trước Hội nghị Phong trào đòi tự do toàn châu Phi ở miền Đông và Trung Phi Châu. Và đã được những nhà lãnh tụ chính trị lão thành của một số quốc gia nhiệt liệt ủng hộ. Năm 1964, ông bị bắt giữ và kết án chung thân, nhưng đã được thả vào năm 1990. Ba năm sau, ông được trao Giải thưởng Nobel Hòa bình, cùng với F.W. de Klerk. Họ đã hiệp lực chấm dứt được chủ nghĩa phân biệt chủng tộc, dẫn đến sự chuyển tiếp hòa bình sang nền dân chủ không phân biệt chủng

tộc ở Nam Phi. Năm 1994, Mandela trở thành vị tổng thống da đen đầu tiên của Nam Phi. Năm năm sau, ông nghỉ hưu khỏi chức vụ tổng thống ở tuổi 81.

a. Complete the chart:

Answer key

People	Achievements
Louis Pasteur	• Inventing the process of pasteurization • Developing vaccines for several diseases including rabies • Being a world-famous chemist
Ton That Tung	• Being a pioneer in liver surgery in Vietnam • Creating a new technique for operating on the liver in 4 to 8 minutes
Nelson Mandela	• Forming the Youth League of ANC to fight against apartheid • Addressing the Conference of the Pan-African Freedom Movement of East and Central Africa • Being awarded the Nobel Peace Prize in 1993 • Becoming the first black president of South Africa.

b) Reading comprehension:

Suggested answers

1. He developed vaccines for several diseases including rabies.
2. 'Ton That Tung method' has enabled a liver operation to be completed in 4 to 8 minutes instead of 3 to 6 hours as before.
3. He was imprisoned for 26 years.
4. Because he struggled to end apartheid and brought a peaceful transition to a non-racial democracy in South Africa.

c) Work in groups to discuss the contribution of a hero/heroine or famous person in VN

Suggested answer:

- Two of the most popular heroines in Vietnam are the Trưng Sisters, Trưng Trắc and Trưng Nhị.
- They led the first national uprising against the Chinese invaders.
- They mobilized the Vietnamese lords, gathered an army of 80,000 people to rebel against the Chinese domination.
- In the year of 40 A.D., the Trưng Sisters's army successfully drove the Chinese invaders out of our country.
- After their victory, the people proclaimed Trưng Trắc to be their ruler.

Shee was renamed 'Trưng Vương' and established the kingdom in MeLinh, an ancient political center in the Hong River plain.

Shee abolished the taxes imposed by the Chinese invaders.

LISTENING

Questions – Answers:

Suggested answers

1. Picture a: Da Lat with its golf course and pine trees.

Picture b: Nha Trang with its wonderful beach and coconut trees.

2. Alexandre Yersin discovered Dalat

3. Alexandre Yersin founded the Pasteur Institute in Nha Trang.

Short talk about Alexandre Yersin:

Answer key:

1. F → Alexandre Yersin was born in Switzerland

2. T He graduated from a medical school in Paris.

3. F → His home is in Nha Trang.

4. F → He built the Pasteur Institute in Nha Trang.

5. F → He discovered Dalat in the 19th century.

What happened to Yersin in the following years:

Đáp án:

- 1888: joined Dr. Louis Pasteur's team

- 1891: discovered Da Lat

- 1940: returned to France

- 1943: died in Nha Trang

Multiple choice questions:

Đáp án:

1. D He raised horses to use in his research.

2. B He introduced the rubber tree into Vietnam.

3. C Quinine can be found in Cinchona (quinquina) plantations.

4. B People in Nha Trang loved him because he was humane.

5. D He died at the age of eighty.

In groups, talk about Yersin's contributions to Vietnam.

Đáp án gợi ý:

Dùng Khoa, do you know who discovered our city Da Lat?

Khoa Alexandre Yersin. In 1892, he went on an expedition to the highlands of Vietnam and found a place where the weather was ideal, the landscape picturesque and few local people living near a river. Then, Dalat city was founded.

Dung Right. And it was also Dr. Yersin who introduced the Brazilian rubber tree into Vietnam. Now there are many rubber plantations in the provinces of Dong Nai and Binh Duong, and our country exports rubber to the world.

Khoa Yes, Dr. Yersin made considerable contributions to Vietnam, his second homeland. He was also responsible for the first quinquina plantations in Vietnam, from which quinine was produced. This has been used to cure malaria.

Dung Well, that's why Doctor Yersin is still well-remembered in Vietnam. Every year, many local people and tourists visit his tomb in Nha Trang with flowers and prayers. Have you ever been there, Khoa? If you come to Nha Trang, don't miss visiting Yersin's tomb in Suối Dầu, and the Yersin Museum on 8 - 10 Trần Phú boulevard. That used to be Dr. Yersin's former home within the enclosure of the Pasteur Institute.

Khoa Oh, I won't miss it the next time I visit Nha Trang.

SPEAKING

Talking about People's Backgrounds

a) Make questions about Louis Pasteur:

Possible questions

1. When and where was Louis Pasteur born?
2. What did he do? What was he famous for?
3. What were his scientific achievements? / What did he invent?
4. When did he receive his doctorate?
5. What did he find in 1888 to save people's lives?
6. How was he honored?

b) Ask and answer about your favorite person's background.

Đáp án gợi ý:

Khương Who's your favorite person, Trang?

Trang It's Marie Curie. She was a French scientist, born in Poland in 1867.

Khương A scientist? Which field did she specialize in?

Trang She specialized in chemistry and physics. She did her university studies at the Sorbonne in Paris. This is a world-famous university.

Khương What's her job and what could she do in her job?

Trang She taught at the Sorbonne and, together with her husband Pierre Curie, did a lot of research. Their research into radioactivity led to the discovery of radium and polonium. After her husband's death, Marie Curie worked on medical uses of their discoveries in X-rays.

Khương You have great admiration for her, don't you?

Trang Yes, I admire her for her valuable scientific contributions to mankind. She was jointly awarded the Nobel Prize for Physics in 1903, and received the Nobel Chemistry Prize in 1911. She was the first person to win 2 Nobel Prizes!

Chuong A great woman indeed!

WRITING

Writing a Summary of a Biography

a) Reading comprehension (paragraph 1)

Đáp án:

11. Elizabeth Blackwell was born in England in 1821.
22. She emigrated to New York City when she was ten.
33. She wanted to become a doctor.
44. It was difficult for her to realize her dream because she was a woman in the nineteenth century.

b) Questions and answers about Elizabeth Blackwell (paragraph 2)

Đáp án gợi ý:

11. What happened to Blackwell in 1849?
She graduated from medical school but couldn't further her education in Paris because of a serious eye infection.
22. Why was it difficult for Elizabeth Blackwell to start her own practice in the US?
It was difficult for her to start her own practice because she was a woman doctor.
33. What did she do in 1857?
In 1857, she opened a new hospital for women and children in the United States.
44. What else did she do for women in the US?
She established the first medical school for women.

c. Summary of paragraph 2:

Đáp án gợi ý:

In 1849, Elizabeth Blackwell graduated from medical school and wanted to be a surgeon, but she couldn't pursue her studies in Paris because of a serious eye infection. As a woman, it was difficult for her to start her own practice in the United States then. Till 1857, together with two other female doctors, she managed to open the first hospital for women and children in the U.S. She also established the first medical school for women.

LANGUAGE FOCUS

Word study

Compound Adjectives

Noun + Adjective → Compound Adjective

a. Matching a noun in Column A with an adjective in Column B to form a compound adjective.

Đáp án:

Column A (noun)	Column B (adjective)	Compound Adjective
1. man	a. famous	1. man-made
2. duty	b. made	2. duty-free
3. world	c. free	3. world-famous
4. frost	d. friendly	4. frost-free
5. environment	e. free	5. environment-friendly

b. Complete the sentences:

Đáp án:

1. Man-made structures should respect nature.
2. A frost-free fridge uses a lot of energy
3. Shakespeare is a world-famous playwright.
4. You can find a duty-free shop at the airport.
5. It's time for manufacturers to think of environment-friendly products.

Grammar

Wh- Questions

a. Make Wh- questions:

Đáp án:

1. What is one of the most beautiful sights in Viet Nam?
2. How long is this street?
3. How did he answer the phone? What did he do hurriedly?
4. Why did they cancel their trip?
5. Whose new car is red?

b. Ask Wh- questions:

Đáp án gợi ý:

1. What color would you like? -
2. How old is your sister?
3. How far is your school from your house?
4. How did he/she answer the phone?
5. What's your boss like?

1. What would you say in the following situations?

Đáp án gợi ý:

1. You are talking to a girl at a party. Ask her about her study.

What school do you go to?

How many classes do you have a week?

Which subject do you like best?

2. You want to know when you hand in your assignment.

When should we hand in our assignment, Ngọc?

When's our assignment due, Ngọc?

3. Your friend is having a party. You'd like to know who he has invited?

Who have you invited to your party, Tú?

Who's invited to your party, Tú?

4. You've forgotten when the English course finishes.

When will our English course finish?

5. Your mother went shopping. You want to know the amount of beef she bought.

How much beef did you buy, mom?

BÀI TẬP Củng Cố

UNIT 2

A. PHONETICS

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others in the same line.

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. <u>h</u> eroine | B. <u>h</u> onor | C. <u>h</u> umane | D. <u>h</u> ospital |
| 2. A. <u>a</u> partheid | B. <u>a</u> ward | C. <u>w</u> armly | D. <u>t</u> owards |
| 3. A. <u>l</u> eague | B. <u>f</u> reedom | C. <u>s</u> enior | D. <u>m</u> ethod |
| 4. A. <u>c</u> athedral | B. <u>c</u> ongress | C. <u>c</u> entral | D. <u>c</u> hemist |
| 5. A. <u>p</u> rotest | B. <u>s</u> oldier | C. <u>d</u> iscover | D. <u>p</u> agoda |

II. Choose the word whose stress pattern is different from the rest in each group.

- | | | | |
|------------------|---------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 6. A. arrest | B. address | C. practice | D. invent |
| 7. A. movement | B. technique | C. rabies | D. battle |
| 8. A. surgery | B. president | C. funeral | D. physician |
| 9. A. pioneer | B. admission | C. transition | D. disaster |
| 10. A. biologist | B. presidency | C. original | D. imprisonment |

B. GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY

I. Word study:

a) *Form compound adjectives by matching the nouns in column A with the adjectives in column B:*

A (noun)	B (Adjective)
11. sky	like
12. pollution	sick
13. sea	blue
14. child	high
15. knee	free

b) *Fill in each blank with an appropriate compound adjective from exercise (a)*

16. The car of the future will be far more _____ than those on the road today.
17. The uniforms of Vietnamese air-hostesses used to be _____ 'áo dài'.
18. I have never travelled by ship because I'm scared of being _____.
19. Although she is a tenth-grader, Lan is still _____ and cries very easily.
20. The cowboy is watching his cattle grazing in the _____ pasture.

II. *For each sentence, choose the best answer (A, B, C, or D) to fill the blank.*

21. A: _____ book is that?
B: It's Lan's.
A. Which B. Who's C. Whose D. What
22. A: _____ do you visit your grandparents?
B: Every weekend.
A. How much B. How many C. How often D. How long
23. A: _____'s the weather like in Hue?
B: It's very cold now.
A. What B. How cold C. How D. Which
24. A: _____ can I buy a reliable laptop?
B: Ask Mary for advice.
A. What B. Where C. Who D. Which
25. A: _____'s phoning?
B: I don't know.
A. When B. Where C. Who D. What
26. Who _____ that song?
A. is written B. was written C. did write D. wrote

27. When _____ back from Australia?
 A. they came B. did they came C. did they come D. were they come
28. _____ did Elizabeth Blackwell emigrate to the U.S.?
 A. At what age B. How old C. How far D. How long
29. _____ ever been to Singapore?
 A. Do you B. Have you C. Did you D. Will you
30. Louis Pasteur _____ an institution for the treatment of rabies in 1888.
 A. founded B. found C. has found D. had found

C. READING COMPREHENSION

Fill in each blank of the passage with an appropriate word from the box below

created	won	Mickey Mouse	annual	influential
lung cancer	co-founder	director	opening	entertainment

Walter Elias Disney (December 5, 1901 – December 15, 1966) was a multiple Academy Award-winning American film producer and _____ (31). He received fifty-nine Academy Award nominations and _____ (32) twenty-six Oscars. Disney was notable as one of the most _____ (33) and innovative figures in the field of _____ (34) during the twentieth century. Disney and his staff _____ (35) a number of the world's most famous fictional characters, including _____ (36), Donald Duck, Peter Pan. As the _____ (37) (with his brother Roy O. Disney) of Walt Disney Productions, Disney became one of the best-known motion picture producers in the world. The corporation he co-founded, now known as The Walt Disney Company, today has _____ (38) revenues of approximately U.S. \$35 billion. Disney died of _____ (39) on December 15, 1966, a few years prior to the _____ (40) of his Walt Disney World dream project in Lake Buena Vista, Florida.

D. WRITING

Write Wh- questions for the following answers.

41. A: _____? (studying English)
 B: For four years.
42. A: _____? (cell phone)
 B: It's a Nokia.
43. A: _____? (pictures taken)
 B: About fifty.

44. A: _____? (Dalat to Nha Trang)
 B: It's about 200 kilometres.
45. A: _____? (a liter of petrol)
 B: It's about 17.000 VND.

ĐÁP ÁN UNIT 2

A. PHONETICS

1. B. <u>h</u> onor	2. A. apar <u>t</u> heid	3. D. meth <u>o</u> d	4. C. <u>c</u> entral
5. C. disc <u>o</u> ver	6. C. pract <u>i</u> ce	7. B. techn <u>i</u> que	8. D. physici <u>a</u> n
9. A. pion <u>e</u> er	10. B. presid <u>e</u> ncy		

B. GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY

Compound adjective (Noun + Adjective)

- 11. sky-blue
- 12. pollution-free
- 13. seasick
- 14. childlike
- 15. knee-high

- | | | | |
|----------------------|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| 16. pollution-free | 17. sky-blue | 18. sea-sick. | 19. child-like |
| 20. knee-high | 21. C. Whose | 22. C. How often | |
| 23. A. What | 24. B. Where | 25. C. Who | 26. D. wrong |
| 27. C. did they come | 28. A. At what age | 29. B. Have you | 30. A. found |

C. READING COMPREHENSION:

Answer keys 31-40:

Walter Elias Disney (December 5, 1901 – December 15, 1966) was multiple Academy Award-winning American film producer and **director** (31). He received fifty-nine Academy Award nominations and **won** (32) twenty-six Oscars. Disney was notable as one of the most **influential** (33) and **innovative** figures in the field of **entertainment** (34) during the twentieth century. Disney and his staff **created** (35) a number of the world's most famous fictional characters, including **Mickey Mouse** (36), Donald Duck, and Peter Pan. As the **co-founder** (with his brother Roy O. Disney) of Walt Disney Productions, Disney became one of the best-known motion picture producers in the world. The corporation he co-founded, now known as The Walt Disney Company, today has **annual** (38) revenues of approximately U.S. \$35 billion. Disney died at

ung; cancer (39) on December 15, 1966, a few years prior to the **opening** (40) of his Walt Disney World dream project in Lake Buena Vista, Florida.

D. WRITING

1. How long have you been studying English?
2. What make is your cell phone?
3. How many pictures have you taken?
4. How far is it from Dalat to Nha Trang?
5. How much is a liter of petrol?

Unit 3

DAILY ACTIVITIES

READING

Before you read

Đáp án gợi ý:

Picture	Job	Routines
Picture a	A teacher	- teaches at school. - observes her / his colleagues' classes. - participates in school meetings. At home: - corrects and scores students' assignments. - reads books or searches the Internet for information. - designs lesson plans.
Picture b	A worker	<i>- works in shift: day or night shift.</i> Dayshift: - works in the factory, maybe from 7:00 a.m. to 11:00a.m - has lunch in the canteen - takes a nap at the factory - resumes work at 1:00 p.m. - finishes work at 5:00 p.m.
Picture c	A farmer	- gets up early - works in the field all day. - grows, tends or harvests crops

Picture d	A doctor	- checks patients' health - reads patient's records - has meetings with colleagues - does medical research
-----------	----------	---

Chú thích từ ngữ:

To work in shift

làm việc theo ca

Reading text

Bài dịch gợi ý

MỘT NGÀY TIÊU BIỂU CỦA CHÚ CÔNG NHÂN

Yamada làm việc cho Công ty Kawada, công việc là lắp ráp ống khói xe hơi. Mỗi buổi sáng, chú thức dậy lúc 5:15 và dùng điểm tâm với trứng, súp rau, cơm và trà xanh. Lúc 5:55, trong khi các con còn đang ngon giấc, chú đã rời căn nhà hai phòng ngủ đi bộ đến ga xe lửa vào thành phố. Chú lên xe lửa lúc 6:30 và ba mươi phút sau, xuống xe ở trạm Hyogo, cách xưởng máy vài dặm phố. Yamada hành hạ đến nhà máy để bấm lỗ thẻ vào cửa, năm phút trước khi chuông reo.

Giống những công nhân khác trong xưởng máy, chú Yamada bắt đầu làm việc lúc 8:00 giờ với bài tập khởi động năm phút. Đến 12 giờ trưa, chuông báo giờ ăn trưa khi các chú công nhân còn đang làm việc. Họ kéo nhau xuống phòng ăn, dùng cơm với cá, rau, và uống trà nóng. Họ không có nhiều thời gian cho bữa ăn trưa. Lúc 12:20 giờ, các chú công nhân giải trí như chơi cờ. Chú Yamada thường hay chơi cầu lông, hoặc tùm lại tán gẫu. Chú hiếm khi ngủ sau bữa ăn trưa.

Công việc tiếp tục trở lại lúc 1:00 giờ trưa, cũng lại với năm phút khởi động. Chú Yamada xong việc lúc 5:00 giờ, nhưng đôi khi lại làm việc ngoài giờ thêm một hoặc hai tiếng nữa.

Chú Yamada hưởng lương 1,500 đô la mỗi tháng, và được tiền thưởng hai lần trong năm. Phụ thêm vào còn có tiền ngoài giờ gần 400 đô-la mỗi tháng. Chú không có trình độ đại học nên ít cơ hội thăng tiến. Tuy nhiên, chú thích công việc đang làm cũng như cái cảm giác an toàn ổn định ở công ty.

a. Complete the chart:

Đáp án

Activities	
Morning	• Getting up at 5:15 • Having breakfast • Traveling to the factory • Doing a 5 minutes exercise • Installing pipes in cars

Noon	• Having lunch • Playing games/ Talking with friends/ Taking a nap
Afternoon	• Doing exercise • Continuing work in the afternoon • Working overtime/ Going home

b. Comprehension questions:

Đáp án gợi ý

1. Yamada leaves home at 5:55 a.m. and gets to his office about 7:50 a.m. He walks to the commuter train station and it takes him 70 minutes to arrive at Hyogo Station, a few blocks from his factory.
2. His annual net income is \$ 18,000.
3. Yes, they do. They stop for lunch at noon and resume work at 1:00 p.m. They don't take a nap but play games, chess, or talk to each other.

c. Vocabulary:

Đáp án

Commuter (n)	A person who travels into a city to work each day (d)
Stream (v)	Move in large numbers, one after another (f)
Resume (v)	Continue (g)
Bonus (n)	Payment added to what is usual (e)
Promotion (n)	The act of being raised to a higher rank (b)
Count on (v)	Rely on (a)
Install (v)	Fix equipment in position for use (c)

- d. College education is not important to Yamada because the company gives him job security. Do you agree with his opinion? Why or why not?**

Đáp án gợi ý

- I think that college education is important because it helps people be better prepared for their future. It may help them get well-paid jobs and have good opportunities for promotion.
- However a nation also needs workers. Some people, who cannot go to college or university for certain reasons, may attend vocational schools and become skilled workers.
- They can attend in-service schools to further their education.
- Job security is one of the important factors that affect a person's choice of career. Other factors may include high salary, job satisfaction, a pleasant working environment, etc...

LISTENING

a) Which of the following activities and health habits should a beautiful queen acquire or do?

1. playing sports
2. eating cakes and candy
3. eating fruit and vegetables
4. drinking wine and beer
5. Drinking tea and coffee
6. Smoking

Đáp án gợi ý:

- She should play sport to keep herself fit.
- To keep herself healthy and beautiful, she should eat low-fat food, lots of fruit and vegetables. She shouldn't drink too much coffee, beer or wine.
- She shouldn't smoke.

b) Karen, a reporter, is interviewing Lisa, Miss Venezuela. Check the things Lisa does.

Đáp án:

- | | |
|---------------------------|---|
| 1. Going to the gym | x |
| 2. Going to a health club | |
| 3. Jogging | x |
| 4. Riding a bicycle | |
| 5. Eating fish | x |
| 6. Eating fruit | x |
| 7. Eating vegetables | x |
| 8. Smoking | |
| 9. Drinking wine | x |
| 10. Drinking beer | |

c) How often she does those activities.

Đáp án:

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 3. Jogging | every morning |
| 5. Eating fish | four times a week |
| 6. Eating fruit | every day |
| 7. Eating vegetables | every day |
| 9. Drinking wine | once a day/ every day |

d) Work in groups and tell your partners what you often do and eat to keep fit.

Đáp án gợi ý:

I have three main meals a day. For breakfast, I usually have bread and eggs or jam or butter, and a cup of milk. For lunch and dinner, I have rice, meat or fish,

vegetables and soup. I like fat very much but I am trying to cut down on it to keep myself healthy. I also play sport to keep fit. My classmates and I often play football on Saturdays after class.

SPEAKING

Talking about Daily Activities

a) Complete the conversation:

Đáp án gợi ý:

Journalist Hi, Mai. May I ask you some questions about your job?

Mai Yes, of course.

Journalist What time do you arrive at your office?

Mai At 7:45, because I always begin work at eight o'clock.

Journalist What do you usually do in the morning?

Mai I'm very busy in the morning. First of all, I open the mail and answer customers' letters.

Journalist And then?

Mai Well, I report to the manager and do things that he requests. I have lunch at noon.

Journalist At what time do you resume work?

Mai In the afternoon, I continue my work at 1:00p.m.

Journalist Your afternoon is also busy, isn't it?

Mai Yes. I answer phones, arrange appointments for the manager, and type reports. Sometimes I have to work overtime.

Journalist You're quite a committed worker. Do you like your job?

Mai Although I have to do the same things every day, I still like my job because I'm working with a good staff.

Journalist Thank you, Mai.

b) You are a TV reporter. Interview your partner, a businessman or a singer, and then report his/her routine to your class

Đáp án gợi ý:

Reporter Good morning, Ms. Thu Thảo. Do you mind if I ask you some questions about your current activities?

Thu Thảo Of course not.

Reporter You have been very busy these days, haven't you?

Thu Thảo Yes, I've been participating in several musical shows and singing at ABC Bar.

Reporter What do you usually do in the morning Ms. Thảo?

- Thu Thảo* Well, I get up a bit late, about 9:00 a.m. I do some exercise, watch television, read online newspapers or search the Internet. Sometimes I go shopping, to the spa or eat out with my friends.
- Reporter* I see, and in the afternoon?
- Thu Thảo* I listen to music, practice singing and dancing, rehearse with the group for the performances... Well, I make full use of my time. A lot of practice and rehearsal.
- Reporter* Hard work indeed. What time does your day usually finish??
- Thu Thảo* My last show at the bar often finishes at 11:30p.m. I return home, have supper and go to bed.
- Reporter* Thank you very much for sparing us some of your busy time.
- Miss Thảo* We wish you great success in your next performance.
- Thu Thảo* Thank you. Bye-bye

Other suggestion:

A businessman's activities

- Having meetings/ business lunch
- Signing contracts
- Working on the computer
- Playing sports/ golf
- attending an exhibition
- Reading documents

c) Write 5 sentences about what you often do on weekends.

Đáp án gợi ý:

- I go shopping at the supermarket with my mother in the morning.
- I go swimming at Yết Kiêu swimming-pool with my elder brother in the afternoon.
- Every other week, my parents and I visit my grandparents in Thủ Đức.
- I search the internet or play games on the computer in the evening.
- My friends and I go out for a drink or go around the city centre.

WRITING

Writing a letter of Complaint

a) Andrew's letter of complaint

Đáp án gợi ý:

1. Andrew complains about the poor quality of the order. The book that ABC Publisher sent him had sixteen (16) pages missing.
2. He suggests that ABC Publisher send him another copy the soonest.

Some recommendations for writing a letter of complaint

Present your letter on one page, with spacing between paragraphs, and each idea in a separate sentence.

Check carefully for spelling, grammar and punctuation mistakes. Do not use abbreviations in your letter.

You can include the following information:

1. *Explain why you are writing:*

I am writing concerning..... (the bad quality, the poor service ...)

I am writing to express my dissatisfaction about

2. *State the reason for complaint / the problem:*

I regret to inform you that

We were disappointed to find that ...

3. *State the action you require the other person / company to take*

I request...

We hope that you will...

4. *Closing*

I hope you will do something for compensation.

I look forward to hearing from you soon.

o) Your class took a tour of Ha Long last month but the tour was very poorly run. Write a letter to the travel agency to complain about the tour (the hotel, the meals, the tour guide).

Some suggestions:

- The bus was uncomfortable / not airy/ went too fast...
- The boat trip was not safe/ not enough life jackets...
- The hotel was not good/ too noisy/ too old/ tiny rooms ...
- The hotel service was poor/ too slow...
- The meals were poor/ not fresh/ not enough food...

Chú thích từ ngữ:

Airy:: thông thoáng

life jackets: áo phao/ áo cứu đuối

Suggested answer

Dear Sir / Madam,

On behalf of my class, I am writing concerning the sight-seeing tour of Ha Long Bay organized by your company on July 15.

We are students of Trần Phú High school. Last Saturday, we booked a two-day package tour for forty students at your travel agency. We were disappointed to find that the service was not as good as advertised. First, each hotel room accommodated five instead of four students, as specified in the contract.

Secondly, the boat trip was dangerous because not all the students were provided with life-jackets, and the boatman was a bit aggressive to us. We were terribly upset, and the trip was partly ruined.

We would like you to look into this matter and do something for compensation. We look forward to hearing from you soon.

Yours faithfully,

Ngbaodung

Nguyễn Thị Bảo Dung

Student representative

LANGUAGE FOCUS

Word Study

Compound Adjectives

Fill in the blanks with compound adjectives

Đáp án:

1. My parents saw a three-act play last night.
2. Peter brought a fifteen-piece tool set.
3. Margie has a five-shelf bookcase.
4. These are twenty-dollar shoes.
5. Daisy wrote a ten-page report.

Grammar

Revision of the Present Simple, Present Progressive, Present Perfect, Past Simple

a) Present Simple vs. Present Progressive

PRESENT SIMPLE

○ Use the present simple for actions that are always true or happen regularly in the present.

Examples:

The sun **rises** in the East.

They **work** in a bank.

Where do you **live**?

He **doesn't wear** glasses.

○ Put adverbs of frequency, e.g. *usually, often, always...*, before the main verb and after *be*.

Examples:

She usually **has** noodles for breakfast.

I'm never late for work.

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

Use the present progressive for actions in progress at the time of speaking or for future arrangements.

Examples:

Who **are** you waiting for?

I'm **waiting** for a friend.

What **are** you **doing** after class?

I'm **going** to the library.

áp án:

1. am thinking; cost; is
2. looks; doesn't fit; don't know
3. What are you doing?; am looking
4. think; is going; agree
5. like; Are you enjoying; love
6. fall; do you go; doesn't make
7. am staying; am looking; promise
8. do you want; don't understand; are

) Present Perfect

áp án:

1. This is the second time the printer hasn't worked.
2. This is the second time I've stayed in this hotel.
3. This is the fifth time I've missed the bus.
4. This is the third time I've lost my money.
5. This is the first time I've given a 15-minute talk in English.

) The Present Perfect vs. the Past Simple

Use the present perfect when there is a connection between the past and present.

Use the past simple to ask or talk about **finished** actions in the past, when the time is mentioned or understood. We often use a past time expression: yesterday, last week ...

Example

I've **been** to Nha Trang twice. I **went** there in 2005 and 2007.

My sister **has worked** for BIDV bank for three years. (She's still working there)

My sister **worked** for BIDV bank for three years before joining Unilever VN Ltd.

(She doesn't work for BIDV bank any more.)

áp án:

- | | | | | |
|-------------------|------------------|-------------|--------------------|----------|
| 1. Have you heard | 2. happened | 3. had | 4. fell | 5. broke |
| 6. did it happen | 7. told | 8. knew | 9. didn't you tell | |
| 10. didn't see | 11. haven't seen | 12. has had | 13. hit | 14. was |

BÀI TẬP Củng Cố

UNIT 3

A. PHONETICS

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced different from the others in the same line.

- | | | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. A. Installed <u>ed</u> | B. complained <u>ed</u> | C. resumed <u>ed</u> | D. announced <u>ed</u> |
| 2. A. colleges <u>s</u> | B. computers <u>s</u> | C. employees <u>s</u> | D. conditions <u>s</u> |
| 3. A. <u>a</u> partment | B. <u>a</u> nnounce | C. <u>a</u> chievement | D. <u>a</u> nnual |
| 4. A. w <u>a</u> lk | B. j <u>o</u> b | C. m <u>o</u> re | D. th <u>o</u> ught |
| 5. A. tr <u>a</u> in | B. g <u>a</u> me | C. br <u>e</u> ak | D. gr <u>a</u> duate |

II. Choose the word whose stress pattern is different from the rest each group.

- | | | | |
|------------------|-------------|----------------|-------------------|
| 6. A. because | B. about | C. under | D. towards |
| 7. A. payment | B. bonus | C. parcel | D. complaint |
| 8. A. badminton | B. commuter | C. overtime | D. vegetable |
| 9. A. reference | B. another | C. employee | D. promotion |
| 10. A. education | B. security | C. institution | D. transformation |

B. GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY

I. Fill in the blanks with compound adjectives formed by: number + noun

11. She is signing an employment contract for one year.
She is signing a _____ employment contract.
12. The mother is feeding her baby who is two months old.
The mother is feeding her _____-old baby.
13. It takes you ten minutes to drive to the market.
It's a _____ drive to the market.
14. This is a coin of fifty cents.
This is a _____ coin.
15. She gave a presentation that lasts three hours.
She gave a _____ presentation.

II. For each sentence, choose the best answer (A, B, C, or D) to fill the blank.

16. A: Where _____ lunch today?
B: At home. My mum's making chicken soup.
A. are you having B. you have C. you'll have D. did you have
17. C: _____ to eat out tonight?
D: Yes, that would be nice. Where shall we go?
A. Would you mind B. Shall we C. Let's D. Do you want

8. A: What _____?
B: He's an engineer.
A. does he do B. is he doing C. has he done D. did he do
9. C: _____ away this week end?
D: No, we're staying here
A. Did you go B. Are you going
C. Have you gone D. Did you went
10. A: What _____?
B: I don't know, but it smells good
A. she cook B. she is cooking
C. is she cooking D. was she cooking
11. Why haven't you done the washing up _____?
A. already B. still C. yet D. just
12. 'Be careful. I've _____ cleaned the floor. It's still wet and slippery'
A. already B. still C. yet D. just
13. He _____ at Dalat University for 4 years. He's now working as an engineer.
A. studied B. has studied C. had studied D. was studied
14. I _____ any news from him since he moved to the U.S.
A. didn't get B. haven't got C. hadn't got D. wouldn't get
15. Hamlet _____ by Shakespeare in 1603
A. wrote B. has written C. has been written D. was written

C. READING COMPREHENSION:

Read the following passage. Choose the best answers (A, B, C, or D) to fill in the blanks.

In the modern world, more governments and companies are paying for a _____ (26) environment. They want factories to store toxic substances in a _____ (27) way. They do not want factories to _____ (28) the earth, air or water. _____ (29) engineers help control such pollution. Stephen Martinez is an environmental engineer and he works both indoors and _____ (30). Today he is looking for gas and other toxic substances at a cement _____ (31). Those substances have no taste or smell, but they _____ (32) poison people, animals or plants. Together with his _____ (33), Stephen is testing the _____ (34), air, water near the factory. He is digging a hole and using special tools to collect samples for _____ (35) experiments.

26. A. green B. worse C. cleaner D. beautiful
27. A. care B. careless C. safe D. safety
28. A. change B. pollute C. effect D. harmful

- | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|---------------|------------------|
| 29. A. chemical | B. electric | C. economic | D. environmental |
| 30. A. inside | B. outside | C. outdoors | D. open-air |
| 31. A. park | B. factory | C. location | D. yard |
| 32. A. have | B. are | C. do | D. can |
| 33. A. employer | B. graduate | C. co-worker | D. classmate |
| 34. A. dirt | B. dirty | C. odor | D. color |
| 35. A. company | B. laboratory | C. university | D. family |

D. WRITING

Correct the mistakes in the underlined phrases

36. What year have you left school?
37. They live in Dalat since 1970.
38. We haven't seen each other since we have leaved school.
39. He left quite early but he yet hasn't arrived.
40. Have you ever wrote a poem?
41. I sent her an email last week, but she doesn't reply yet.
42. We're lost. We already have been down this road twice.
43. She have never been to Da Nang.
44. I've lent him some money last week but, he hasn't paid me back yet.
45. I don't see them often but I've known them since ten years

DÁP ÁN:

UNIT 3

A. PHONETICS

1. D. <u>announced</u>	2. A. <u>colleges</u>	3. D. <u>annual</u>	
4. B. <u>job</u>	5. D. <u>graduate</u>	6. C. <u>under</u>	
7. D. <u>complaint</u>	8. B. <u>commuter</u>	9. A. <u>reference</u>	10. B. <u>security</u>

B. GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY

11. She is signing a one-year contract.
 12. The mother is feeding her two-month-old baby.
 13. It's a ten-minute drive to the market.
 14. This is a fifty-cent coin.
 15. She gave a three-hour presentation.
- | | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| 16. A. are you having | 17. D. Do you want | 18. A. does he do |
| 19. B. Are you going | 20. C. is she cooking | 21. C. yet |
| 22. D. just | 23. A. studied | 24. B. haven't got |
| 25. D. was written | | |

1. READING COMPREHENSION

- | | | | |
|------------------|---------------|-------------|----------------|
| 6. Cleaner | 27. safe | 28. pollute | |
| 9. Environmental | 30. Outdoors | 31. Factory | |
| 2. Can | 33. co-worker | 34. dirt | 35. laboratory |

2. WRITING

6. What year did you leave school?
7. They have lived in Dalat since 1970.
8. We haven't seen each other since we left school.
9. He left quite early but he hasn't arrived yet.
10. Have you ever written a poem?
1. I sent her an email last week, but she hasn't replied yet.
2. We're lost. We have already been down this road twice.
3. She has never been to Da Nang.
4. I lent him some money last week but, he hasn't paid me back yet.
5. I don't see them often but I've known them for ten years.

Unit 4

SPECIAL EDUCATION

READING

Before you read

- a) Schools for disabled children are called special schools. Name some special schools you know.

Đáp án gợi ý:

Nguyễn Đình Chiểu Special School for the Blind in Ho Chi Minh City

The Special School for the Blind of District 10 in Ho Chi Minh City

The Special School for handicapped children in Gò Vấp District, Ho Chi Minh City

Phong Lan Special School for handicapped children in Dalat

The Lâm Đồng Special School for the Deaf and Mute in Dalat.

There are many special schools in Hanoi, Lái Thiêu-Bình Dương, Nha Trang and other cities in Vietnam too.

b) Đáp án gợi ý:

1. The two persons in the pictures 1 & 2 are blind. They are using their fingers to read.
2. The children in the picture 3 are deaf and mute. They are learning to use their hands to express what they mean.
3. Braille alphabet.

c) Quiz

1. People who cannot see are called the blind.
2. People who cannot hear are called the deaf.
3. People who cannot speak are called the mute.

Reading text

Bài dịch gợi ý:

HELEN KELLER (1880- 1968)

Lúc sáu tuổi, cô bé Helen Keller vừa điếc vừa mù lại có phần hơi khờ khạo (ngờ nghếch), được bố mẹ đưa đến Bác sĩ Alexander Graham Bell khám để tìm cách chữa trị. Kết quả của lần khám bệnh là một năm sau đó vào ngày 3 tháng 3 năm 1887, bé được gặp cô Anne Mansfield Sullivan, là cô giáo đầu tiên trong nhiều năm của bé. Chính cô Sullivan, một cô giáo tận tâm, giàu tình cảm đã giúp Helen thoát khỏi thế giới lạng càm của mình.

Bóng tối bắt đầu tan loãng trong tâm trí của bé kể từ khi cô Sullivan li tục xối nước ấm vào một bàn tay của Helen và nhiều lần gõ vào bàn tay kia một mã số gồm năm ký tự – lúc đầu chậm rãi, sau nhanh hơn. Chuyện diễn đi diễn lại như thế và bé Helen nỗ lực chịu khó. Thành công ý nghĩa của những dấu hiệu đó lóe lên trong tâm thức của bé. Bé hiểu ra ‘n-ư-ơ-c’ có nghĩa là cái gì đó ấm áp đang chảy trên tay mình. Đến chiều tối, Helen đã học được 30 từ. Bé tỏ ra có năng khiếu và chẳng bao lâu học được mẫu tự Braille bằng đầu ngón tay và học viết. Trong sáu tháng, cô bé biết được 625 từ.

Đến lúc lên 10, Helen đã thành thuộc chữ Braille cho người mù cũng như chữ dùng tay ra dấu cho người điếc, và còn học cả sử dụng máy đánh chữ. Khi 16 tuổi, Helen nói năng mạch lạc và đi học lớp dự bị, rồi đại học. Năm 1904, tốt nghiệp Đại học Radcliffe hạng ‘xuất sắc’. Cô giáo kiên trì và yêu thương Sullivan luôn sát cánh trong những năm tháng đó, diễn giải các bài giảng và bài thảo luận ở lớp cho cô nghe. Helen Keller, cô bé đáng thương của hai mươi năm trước, đã trở thành một trong những phụ nữ nổi bật của lịch sử. (Cô cống hiến cả đời mình để cải thiện điều kiện sống của người mù, người mù điếc trên thế giới. Cô đã đi giảng dạy trên 25 quốc gia ở các châu lục lớn. Ở đâu cô đến, ở đó cô mang lại sự dũng cảm tự tin cho hàng triệu người mù lòa.

Ghi chú:

Vào năm 1896, Helen Keller học trường nữ trung học Cambridge do Arthur Gilman làm hiệu trưởng để chuẩn bị thi tuyển vào đại học Radcliffe College năm 1899. Radcliffe College là trường dành cho nữ sinh viên trực thuộc trường Đại học Harvard vì vào lúc bấy giờ trường Harvard không thu nhận nữ.

Chú thích từ ngữ:

to break through one's world of silence (còn có nghĩa là): vượt qua vỏ bọc trầm lặng

Braille: hệ thống chữ đọc và viết – đặt tên theo Louis Braille- dành cho những người khiếm thị. Mỗi chữ cái gồm một số nốt nổi trong sáu nốt, sắp xếp theo hình chữ nhật và chia làm hai cột. Mỗi hàng cột có ba nốt xếp theo hàng dọc. Các nốt được tạo nổi trên mặt bìa cứng để người khiếm thị có thể dùng đầu ngón tay cảm nhận thông tin.

Sign language: là loại ngôn ngữ được cộng đồng những người câm và điếc sử dụng để thông tin vì không dùng được lời nói. Người dùng loại ngôn ngữ này có thể dùng hình dáng hoặc cử động của bàn tay, cánh tay, thân hình và nét mặt để ra hiệu thông tin cần truyền đạt. Có nhiều hệ thống ngôn ngữ kí hiệu ngôn ngữ được sử dụng trong những cộng đồng dân tộc khác nhau như American sign language, Australian sign language, v.v...

Manual alphabet: hệ thống chữ cái dành cho những người điếc hay khiếm thính. Mỗi chữ cái được biểu thị bằng một cách sắp xếp các ngón tay khác nhau, cụ thể như sau:

	
	manual alphabet: An alphabet used for communication by hearing-impaired people in which finger positions represent the letters.

a) Put the events of Helen Keller's life into chronological order:

Đáp án:

1. She was born in 1880
2. She became blind and deaf.
3. She met Dr. Alexander Graham Bell.
4. She met Anne Sullivan.
5. She learned Braille.
6. She graduated from Radcliffe College.
7. She gave lectures and traveled to many countries.

b) The following idea is not mentioned in the text.

A. → At six Helen could not see and hear.

c) Comprehension questions:

Đáp án:

1. She was blind, deaf and half-wild.
2. She was seven years old.
3. She had learned sign language.
4. It means 'with honors.'
5. She was a companion and interpreter who helped Helen understand lessons and discussions in class.

d) Group discussion:

Helen Keller's disabilities and her efforts to overcome them.

Suggested answer

- A** I admire Helen Keller. Although she was deaf, blind and half-wild, Helen bravely overcame her disabilities and fate.
- B** Helen was a very hard-working and gifted student. She tried hard and learned to write and read Braille, the fingertip alphabet. By the age of ten she had mastered Braille as well as the manual alphabet for the hearing impaired, and even learned to use the typewriter. Above all, she graduated 'cum laude' from Radcliffe College.
- C** I think Helen was very fortunate to have met Anne Mansfield Sullivan. Ms. Sullivan seemed to be not only a dedicated teacher but a caring mother as well. Ms. Sullivan helped Helen since she was a seven-year-old child until she graduated from college with honors.
- D** In my opinion, Helen owed her teacher a lot. In return for her teacher's devotion, she dedicated her whole life for the blind and the deaf-blind around the world, lecturing in more than 25 countries. I admire both Ms. Sullivan and Ms. Keller.

Note: *devotion: deep strong love (lòng thương yêu vô bờ)*

LISTENING

a) Locate the states of New York and Alabama on the map



b) Fill in the blanks

Answer key

1. Name of school: The New York Institution for the Blind
2. Students' disabilities: Blindness or visual impairment
3. Year of foundation: 1831
4. Year the school name changed: early in the twentieth century

c) True or False?

Answer key

1. T The institute's name is Alabama Institute for the Deaf and Blind.
2. F → It was founded in 1858 (not 1898)
3. F → It has regional centers across the State of Alabama.
4. T Disabled people can adjust to a new way of life through special programs.

SPEAKING

Giving Opinions on the Problems of Disabled Children

- a) A and B are talking about B's friend, a visually impaired girl. Read the dialogue and fill in the blanks with necessary words/ phrases**

Answer key:

- A What's wrong with your friend in the picture?
- B Well, she has difficulty seeing things. She has to use a walking stick to go around
- A Does she go to school?
- B Oh, yes. She attends a special school in her locality.
- A How can she study if she cannot see?
- B She learns Braille, a pattern raised dots that are felt with fingers to help the blind read.

- b) Work in pairs to talk about a mute and deaf student in the same way as in the above dialogue**

- A What's wrong with your friend in the picture?
- B Well, she has difficulty hearing and speaking. She has to use hearing aids to listen when she talks to other people.
- A Does she go to school?
- B Oh, yes. She attends a special school in her neighborhood.
- A How can she study if she cannot hear and speak?
- B Well, she learns sign language and manual alphabet.

- c) In groups, discuss the problems of the deaf and the mute in their daily life and how they overcome them**

Suggested answer:

- A The deaf and the mute encounter big problems in their daily lives, don't they?

- B Sure. They must have difficulty communicating. However, thanks to modern technology, many can make use of hearing aids and can hear what people say.
- C What about speaking? How can they make themselves understood?
- D They can use sign language and gestures to communicate instead of spoken language. They should learn manual alphabet.

WRITING

Filling a Registration Form

Fill in the registration form basing on given information:

INTERNATIONAL SCHOOL OF ENGLISH

REGISTRATION FORM

Personal details

- Family Name TRAN
- First name LINH
- Date of birth
- Home address 555 Nguyen Chi Thanh, Danang
- Home Country Vietnam
- Telephone 05-8356111
- Fax
- E-mail

- Sex M ☒ F ☐
- Occupation
- Passport Number

Course Details

- Check the course you are interested in
- ☐ GENERAL ENGLISH
- ☐ INTENSIVE ENGLISH
- ☐ INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS ENGLISH
- ☐ ACADEMIC ENGLISH COURSE (SCHOOL)
- ☒ TOEFL
- ☐ IELTS
- ☐ TOEIC

....

tranlinh

Chú thích từ ngữ

General English: tiếng Anh dùng trong giao tiếp nói chung

Intensive English: *tiếng Anh cấp tốc / học tập trung*

Academic English course: *tiếng Anh dùng để theo học các lớp trong trường*

TOEFL: *từ viết tắt của kỳ thi Test of English as a Foreign Language, là một kỳ thi trắc nghiệm khả năng dùng tiếng Anh của sinh viên học sinh nước ngoài do cơ quan ETS (Educational Testing Service) tổ chức.*

IELTS: *từ viết tắt của kỳ thi International English Language Testing System để đánh giá khả năng sử dụng tiếng Anh của sinh viên nước ngoài do Trường Đại học Cambridge tổ chức.*

TOEIC: *từ viết tắt của kỳ thi Test of English for International Communication cũng do cơ quan ETS (Educational Testing Service) tổ chức.*

b) Complete PHU DONG LANGUAGE CENTER form:

Suggested answer

PHU DONG LANGUAGE CENTER

Name: NGUYEN THI

Date of birth: October 21, 1990

Why do you take this course?

I plan to pursue my university studies in an English-speaking country.

How long have you learned English? 5 years

Which language(s) do you speak? Vietnamese and English

LANGUAGE FOCUS

Word study

Adjectives Used as Nouns

We can use:

- **the + adjective** to refer to a certain class of people in society: *the poor, the rich, the unemployed, the young, the handicapped ...*
- **the + nationality adjective** (mostly those ending in -ch, -sh) to refer to a people collectively: *the French, the English, the Dutch, the Swiss ...*

a) Noun (N) or adjective (A)?

Answer key

1. There are many blind children around the world **Adjective**
2. In special schools for the blind, educational programs have been developed to help them learn how to adjust to a new way of life **Noun**
3. Blind students learn how to read or write in Braille **Adjective**
4. New technology can help the blind break through their dark world **Noun**

b) Select the proper word to complete each sentence

Answer key

1. The old have a lot of experience of life and can deal with most situations.

2. He gets tired of eating the same old things for breakfast.
3. In my opinion, miniskirts are strictly for the young
4. The bird flew back to the nest to feed her young.
5. He was brave enough to face strong criticism.
6. The brave have no fear.
7. My uncle is a disabled war veteran.
8. The disabled in my neighborhood are well cared for by the authorities.
9. He was found dead of heart attack.
10. The title of the movie is "The Dead Have returned"

Grammar

Revision of the Past Simple and the Past Perfect

PAST PERFECT

- o Formation: **had/ had not + past participle of Verb**
- o Use the past perfect when you are already talking about the past, and want to talk about an earlier past action

Ex: When I woke up, the garden was all wet. It had rained in the night.

a) Put the verbs into the correct form

Answer key

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. had Helen Keller learned | 5. was |
| 2. was | 6. could |
| 3. tapped out | 7. did....(she) learn |
| 4. had learned | 8. Was |

b) Mai's letter to Lee, her pen pal in Korea.

Đáp án:

- | | |
|-----------------|--------------|
| 1. visited | 6. took |
| 2. had informed | 7. had |
| 3. had planned | 8. were |
| 4. arrived | 9. told |
| 5. showed | 10. had been |

c) Complete the sentences

Đáp án gợi ý:

1. When I was young I dreamt of becoming a pilot. Now, I wish to become a sailor.
2. Helen Keller was a gifted and patient woman who had graduated "cum laude" from Radcliffe College.
3. The guest speaker gave a talk to the blind after he had been introduced by the school headmaster.

1. He had been at this special school before working for Thang Long Chopsticks Factory.
5. After he had finished middle school in his town, he went to a vocational school in the city.

BÀI TẬP Củng Cố

UNIT 4

A. PHONETICS

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others in the same line.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| 1. A.. melted <u>d</u> | B. crossed <u>d</u> | C. adjust <u>d</u> | D. dedicat <u>d</u> |
| 2. A.. Experts <u>s</u> | B. parents <u>s</u> | C. lectur <u>s</u> | D. passpor <u>s</u> |
| 3. A.. c <u>o</u> de | B. d <u>o</u> t | C. wr <u>o</u> ng | D. C <u>o</u> llege |
| 4. A.. dis <u>a</u> bled | B. br <u>a</u> ve | C. m <u>a</u> nual | D. f <u>a</u> vorite |
| 5. A.. g <u>i</u> fted | B. v <u>i</u> sual | C. w <u>i</u> cked | D. bl <u>i</u> nd |

II. Choose the word whose stress pattern is different from the rest in each group.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|---------------|----------------|
| 6. A.. adjust | B. enrich | C. master | D. enroll |
| 7. A.. expert | B. patient | C. finger | D. account |
| 8. A.. dedicate | B. interpret | C. develop | D. survive |
| 9. A.. register | B. encounter | C. continent | D. alphabet |
| 10. A. technology | B. registration | C. chronology | D. certificate |

B. GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY

I. For each sentence, choose the best answer (A, B, C, or D) to fill in the blank.

11. He cannot hear. He's _____-impaired.
 A. deaf B. deaf-mute C. hearing D. visually
12. The police are carrying out a _____ investigation of yesterday's bomb suicide.
 A. painful B. painfully
 C. painstaking D. painstakingly
13. Her shoulder is still _____ after the motorbike accident.
 A. painful B. painfully C. painstaking D. painstakingly
14. My sister is going to graduate _____ the University of Economics next year.
 A. at B. in C. off D. from

15. My brother is very good at Maths and _____ a school for gift students.
A. attends B. goes C. learns D. studies
16. She's trying hard to break _____ her shyness.
A. into B. off C. out D. through
17. Asia is the largest of the world's _____.
A. countries E. continents C. oceans D. territories
18. She has difficulty moving and uses a wheelchair. She's a _____ person.
A. patient B. gifted C. disabled D. dedicated
19. She has _____ English since her university studies in the United States.
A. learnt B. studied C. mastered D. proficiency
20. The fans are shouting _____ words to the contestant.
A. courage B. courageous
C. encouragement D. encouraging

II. Simple Past / Past perfect - Match the sentence halves.

Column A	Column B
21 When our friends arrived.....	A. She had made other plans.
22 I took the sweater back because.....	B. I realized that I'd seen it before.
23 Mai didn't come with us.	C. it was the first time she had flown
24 I turned on the TV.....	D. he hadn't studied at all.
25 My sister was nervous because.....	E. I'd forgotten my keys.
26 When the film started,.....	F. I hadn't turned off the cooker.
27 At work I suddenly remembered that.....	G. she had cut her long hair.
28 I couldn't get into my flat because....	H. he had bought me the wrong size
29 I couldn't recognize Lan because ...	I. we hadn't finished cooking dinner
30 He failed all his exams because	J. to watch the news of the terrible earthquake that had happened in China.

C. READING COMPREHENSION

Read the following passage carefully

Gallaudet University is a federally chartered, quasi-governmental university for the education of the deaf and hard-of-hearing, located in Washington, D.C. It was the first school for the advanced education of the deaf and hard-of-hearing in the world, and is still the world's only university in which all programs and services are specifically designed to accommodate deaf and hard-of-hearing students. It was founded in the 1850s, but it wasn't until Abraham Lincoln

igned a charter in 1864 that it was permitted to award degrees to its students. The university was named after Thomas Hopkins Gallaudet, a notable figure in the advancement of deaf education. Gallaudet University is a bilingual institution in which American Sign Language (ASL) and English exist side-by-side. While there are no specific ASL requirements for undergraduates, many graduate programs have sign language proficiency requirements.

Read the statements below. State whether the statement is TRUE or FALSE according to the text. Then correct the false statement.

- 31. _____ Gallaudet University is a special institution for hearing-impaired students.
- 32. _____ Gallaudet University is totally funded by the Government.
- 33. _____ Undergraduate students are requested to be competent at using ASL.
- 34. _____ There are a few universities for hearing-impaired students in the world.
- 35. _____ ASL is also called Braille.

D. WRITING

The airline on which Mr. Nguyen Dinh Hoang was travelling has lost his suitcase. It is a red one containing two suits, three shirts, three T-shirts, three jeans, ties and underwear. He has also packed some gifts for the family and friends: a necklace for his mother, a digital camera for his brother, chocolate, etc... The lost property is estimated at US\$2,800. The flight taken is ZZ 857 departing from Sydney on May 16. Nguyen Dinh Hoang is 28 years old (born in 1990) and resides at 82 Dien Bien Phu, District 1, Ho Chi Minh City.

Fill in the form below with the given information.

LOST LUGGAGE INSURANCE CLAIM FORM	
FAMILY NAME	.....
FIRST NAME	.....
ADDRESS	.....
DATE OF BIRTH	.....
WHAT PIECE(S) OF LUGGAGE HAVE YOU LOST	.....
WHAT COLOR IS THE LUGGAGE	.....
WHICH AIRPORT DID YOUR FLIGHT LEAVE FROM?	.....
WAS YOUR NAME AND ADDRESS ON YOUR LUGGAGE?	.....
WHAT WAS IN YOUR SUITCASE? (Please give as much detail as possible, for example clothing, valuables etc...)	..... ..... .....
WHAT IS THE TOTAL VALUE OF THE MISSING CONTENTS?	.....
Signature	Date

ĐÁP ÁN

UNIT 4

A. PHONETICS

- | | | | |
|------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. B. <u>crossed</u> | 2. C. <u>lectures</u> | 3. A. <u>code</u> | 4. C. <u>manual</u> |
| 5. D. <u>blind</u> | 6. C. <u>master</u> | 7. D. <u>account</u> | 8. A. <u>dedicate</u> |
| 9. B. <u>encounter</u> | 10. B. <u>registration</u> | | |

B. GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY

11. C. hearing 12. C. painstaking 13. A. painful 14. D. from
15. A. attends 16. D. through 17. B. continents 18. C. disabled
19. C. mastered 20. D. encouraging
- 21I. When our friends arrived we hadn't finished cooking dinner.
22H. I took the sweater back because he had bought me the wrong size.
23A. Mai didn't come with us. She had made other plans.
24J. I turned on the TV to watch the news of the earthquake that had happened in China.
25C. My sister was nervous because it was the first time she had flown.
26B. When the film started, I realized that I'd seen it before.
27F. At work I suddenly remembered that I hadn't turned off the cooker.
28E. I couldn't get into my flat because I'd forgotten my keys.
29G. I couldn't recognize Lan because she had cut her long hair.
30D. He failed all his exams because he hadn't studied at all.

C. READING COMPREHENSION

31. TRUE Gallaudet University is a special institution for hearing-impaired students.
32. FALSE → Gallaudet University is quasi-funded by the Government.
33. FALSE → There is no ASL requirements for undergraduate students.
34. FALSE → Gallaudet University is the only university for hearing-impaired students in the world.
35. FALSE → ASL is American Sign Language. It's different from Braille.

D. WRITING

LOST LUGGAGE INSURANCE CLAIM FORM

FAMILY NAME NGUYEN DINH

FIRST NAME HOANG

ADDRESS 82 Dien Bien Phu, District 1, Ho Chi Minh City, Vietnam

DATE OF BIRTH 1990

WHAT PIECE(S) OF LUGGAGE HAVE YOU LOST One (1) suitcase

WHAT COLOR IS THE LUGGAGE Red

WHICH AIRPORT DID YOUR FLIGHT LEAVE FROM? Sydney Airport

WAS YOUR NAME AND ADDRESS ON YOUR LUGGAGE? Yes

WHAT WAS IN YOUR SUITCASE? (Please give as much detail as possible, for example clothing, valuables etc...)

1. clothes: two suits, three shirts, three T-shirts, three jeans, etc...

2. a necklace + receipt

3. a digital camera + receipt

4. chocolate

5. etc...

WHAT IS THE TOTAL VALUE OF THE MISSING CONTENTS? About USD 2,800.

VgدينhHoang

Date: April 2nd, 2008.

CONSOLIDATION I

Units 1-4

LISTENING COMPREHENSION

a) Listen to the talk about an institute for special education and answer the questions

Answer key

1. 1831

2. Between 3 and 21

3. Yes, there are.

b) Listen to short conversations between two people and choose the best answer for each question

Answer key

1. C

2. B

3. B

4. B

5. A

VOCABULARY

a) Write the proper form of each word in parentheses.

Answer key

1. She studied very hard last year, but she couldn't gain admission too at university. (noun)
2. I think young boys and girls have to learn to write effectively. (adverb)
3. Dr. Brown was honored with an award for his excellent work ... (past participle)
4. He was awarded the first prize (past participle)
5. He wants a job with good chances of promotion. (noun)
6. It had been used routinely recently. (adverb)
7. The city's authorities laid the foundation stone of a new university in our city. (noun)
8. He goes to a school for gifted children. (adjective)
9. Write your name, age, and occupation. (noun)
10. How much is the registration fee for this course, miss? (noun)

b) Choose the word or phrase that best completes each sentence or exchange.

Answer key

- | | |
|-------------------|----------------------|
| 11. A achieve | 12. D interest |
| 13. B natural | 14. B pasteurization |
| 15. D vaccination | 16. D bonus |
| 17. B commuter | 18. A disabilities |
| 19. B lasting | 20. C duty-free |

GRAMMAR AND STRUCTURE

a) Put the verbs in parentheses into the past simple, present perfect, or past perfect.

Answer key

1. Have you ever heard; became
2. invented, was, developed
3. was Pasteur appointed, received/had received
4. did the Curies announce; obtained
5. helped; was
6. did Helen Keller master
7. were developed
8. haven't seen; met

. did you go; went; Have you ever been

0. have come

b) Put the verbs in parentheses into the correct form (-ing form or to + base form).

Answer key

- | | |
|------------------------|-------------|
| 1. working | 16. going |
| 2. reading | 17. to come |
| 3. to keep | 18. to lock |
| 4. dancing and singing | 19. to take |
| 5. playing; to buy | 20. buying |

READING

Bài dịch gợi ý

Một giáo viên trường sản sóc đặc biệt

Tôi là một giáo viên bình thường như bao nhiêu giáo viên khác, nhưng học trò của tôi là những em có những khó khăn nghiêm trọng trong học tập – một số em khiếm thính hoặc nói năng khó khăn, trong khi những em khác lại có vấn đề về tâm thần. Trong lớp tôi có 15 em, tuổi từ 10 đến 12. Đội ngũ giáo viên gồm có tôi và hai trợ lý.

Cũng giống như bất kỳ trẻ em nào, học trò của tôi mạnh mẽ này nhưng lại yếu đuối kia. Nếu bạn yêu cầu đưa một hình khối màu vàng, và chúng đưa cho bạn hình khối màu vàng, bạn có thể cảm động đến phát khóc. Đây dường như là một việc đơn giản đối với đứa bé lên năm, nhưng là cả một thành tích đối với các học trò tôi. Chăm sóc lẫn nhau, có thể sử dụng được điện thoại và mua lược ổ bánh mì – chúng chỉ có thể thực hiện được sau khi bạn cất công chỉ bảo trong nhiều năm.

Hàng ngày, tôi làm việc cùng các học sinh đáng yêu của tôi. Chúng tôi có một số thiết bị chuyên dùng như băng từ ghi âm và ghi hình để trợ giúp việc học. Có nhiều thiết bị tốt hơn mà chúng tôi luôn ao ước, như một máy vi tính với các chương trình phần mềm dành cho giáo dục đặc biệt. Trường chúng tôi không giàu, nhưng nhiều trường khác còn có ít hơn chúng tôi nên tôi chẳng than vãn. Tôi tin là giáo viên giỏi có thể làm được nhiều điều dù rất ít tiện nghi.

Giống như các giáo viên trường đặc biệt khác, tôi luôn căng thẳng vì khối lượng công việc đồ sộ. Một số đồng nghiệp đã bỏ cuộc và tìm công việc khác, nhưng tôi thì không. Tôi thích làm việc với các em khuyết tật – không gì có thể sánh với niềm vui tôi cảm nhận khi các học trò của tôi hoàn thành được một công việc khó nhọc.

a) True or False?

Answer key

1. F → The students have severe learning difficulties

2. T At this special school, students learn basic skills for survival.
3. F → They don't have many specialized facilities, and don't have a computer
4. T A special education teacher has to work very hard.
5. T Many special education teachers are under stress.
6. F → The writer won't quit his/her job

b) Comprehension questions:

Answer key

1. Audiotapes, videotapes, computers, etc.
2. Doing simple tasks such as picking out an appropriate block, using a phone, or buying a loaf of bread, etc..
3. Special education teachers.
4. Special education schools.

WRITING

Write a summary based on the text.

A young man hurriedly entered his town library and asked the old librarian for the Greek history book which she had persuaded him to borrow there before. The librarian proudly asked whether he wanted to take it out again and if the book was interesting. The young man replied that he needed the book back because he had written a girl's telephone number in it. Now he wanted to telephone her!

UNIT 5

TECHNOLOGY

I. READING

Before you read

a. Match the object with the names

Đáp án:

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. g | 2. f | 3. a | 4. h | 5. c |
| 6. e | 7. d | 8. j | 9. i | 10. b |

b. Work with a partner to answer the following questions

Đáp án:

1. a. For entertainment: digital audio player, computer
- b. For storing data and images: digital audio player, computer
- c. For recording data and images: digital camera, computer
- d. For cleaning and washing: washing machine, vacuum cleaner
- e. For preparing and cooking food: microwave oven, blender

g. For medical diagnosis: CT scanner, blood pressure monitor

h. For keeping the air cool: air conditioner

2. Đáp án gợi ý:

Modern equipment can make our life more enjoyable and comfortable as it helps entertain us (e.g. TV, DVD recorder) or lighten our work (e.g. washing machine, air conditioner...)

Modern equipment can make our life more comfortable, but not more enjoyable. We become dependent on modern equipment. For example, we cannot work properly when the power is off, and the computer, the fax machine, and other machines stop working.

1) Reading text

Bài dịch gợi ý:

Kỹ Thuật

Đây là năm 2040. Tên tôi là Ben và tôi đang làm việc cho hãng vi tính ABC. Tôi chỉ phải làm việc ba ngày một tuần, thời gian còn lại tôi làm những gì tôi thích. Ông bà tôi thường nói rằng ông bà đã không may mắn như tôi bây giờ- họ đã phải làm việc sáu ngày một tuần!

Một ngày làm việc tiêu biểu của tôi thường bắt đầu lúc 7 giờ sáng. Ngay khi tôi thức dậy, Rosa, cô hầu gái robot của tôi, đã sẵn sàng, tiến đến với một cái máy đa chức năng và gắn nó lên phía trên đầu tôi. Chỉ trong 3 phút, chiếc máy này chải răng, rửa mặt, và chải xong tóc cho tôi. Tiếp đó, Rosa giúp tôi thay đồ và báo cho tôi biết đã đến giờ dùng điểm tâm.

Bob, anh đầu bếp robot của tôi, đang chờ tôi trong nhà bếp với một máy kiểm tra gắn trên một cái cân. Tôi đứng lên cân và đặt tay lên máy kiểm tra. Ngay lập tức, tất cả các trị số về huyết áp, cholesterol và trọng lượng đều xuất hiện trên màn hình tinh thể lỏng của máy. Bob in tờ kết quả ra trên một mảnh giấy nhỏ và chuôi nó vào một cái khe nằm bên trên một chiếc tủ lạnh thông minh kế bên. Thật khá nhanh, sau khi các trị số sức khỏe của tôi đã được kiểm tra xong, tôi nghe một tiếng bíp dài và bữa ăn sáng của tôi xuất hiện ở một khe hở phía bên trái của chiếc tủ lạnh. Những bữa ăn của tôi luôn được chuẩn bị như thế này – cốt là để giúp tôi có sức khỏe tốt.

Hôm nay không phải là ngày làm việc của tôi, bởi thế tôi có thể làm gì tùy thích. Thú tiêu khiển mà tôi thích nhất là lướt net. Tôi chỉ cần một màn hình và chạm tay vào các biểu tượng trên đó. Ông nội tôi thì hơi ghen tị với tất cả các dạng kĩ thuật hiện đại mà tôi đang tận hưởng. Ở thời của ông, một cái CPU từng được sử dụng kết nối với một màn hình, một con chuột và một bàn phím – thật không thể tin được!

Thật ra, tôi không hạnh phúc như ông bà tôi tưởng. Tôi có đủ các loại máy móc quanh mình để làm cho cuộc sống tôi thoải mái nhưng tôi không có nhiều bạn để chuyện trò hay cùng nhau dạo phố. Tôi ghen tị với ông bà vì cuộc sống ông bà tuy bận rộn nhưng có nhiều niềm vui.

a. Choose the best title for the reading passage

Đáp án:

2. Living with modern Technology

B. Answer the questions:

Đáp án:

1. It's a machine that serves many purposes, i.e. the device that Ben uses can brush his teeth, clean his face, and comb his hair.
2. Ben's health values are taken so that the fridge can prepare the meal suitable for his health.
3. He browses the web.
4. He feels envious of all the modern technology Ben's enjoying.
5. used to work six days a week; a CPU used to be connected to a monitor; mouse, and a keyboard; life was busy but full of fun.

c. Read the text again and interpret the sections after or between two dashes.

Choose the appropriate implied meanings given in the box and write them in the blanks

Đáp án:

1. explanation (explaining why my grandparents were not as lucky as I am)
2. apposition (giving more information about Rosa; referring to Rosa)
3. apposition (giving more information about Bob; referring to Bob)
4. explanation (explaining why I need to have my health values checked before my breakfast is prepared)
5. comment (giving a comment to show the writer's surprise at the "backward computer")

d) Discuss in groups:

Đáp án gợi ý:

A) * I think Ben's life is enjoyable because he has all kinds of machines to serve him. Moreover, he doesn't have to work hard all week so he has lots of free time to enjoy life in his own way. He can be sure that his health is always in good condition

* In my opinion, although Ben is served well in such a modern life, he isn't a really happy man. What a person needs is to live with others to share feelings and sympathize with one another. I am afraid that a life with machines around will soon turn him into another kind of modern machine.

B) * Ben's life is enjoyable with modern machines to make his life comfortable and easy. Ben's always in good health because his meals are very well-prepared to suit his health conditions.

* Ben's life is not very enjoyable. In fact, he is very lonely. Living among modern technology is boring.

I. LISTENING

1. Name different parts of a digital camera, using the words and phrases in the box.

Đáp án:

- 1. shutter button (a button to start the recording of images)
 - 2. lens (where images are received)
 - 3. mode dial (a button to select the way a picture can be taken, e.g. automatic, manual, indoors, outdoor,...)
 - 4. power button (a button to start the camera)
 - 5. zoom button (a button to enlarge or reduce the size of the image to be taken)
 - 6. LCD screen (where the image is seen)
7. Lisa is asking John how to use a digital camera. Listen to their conversation and put the pictures in the order of the steps John suggests

Đáp án:

- 1.c 2.a 3.d 4.b

8. Listen again and answer the questions:

Đáp án:

- 1. Her father
- 2. A dog
- 3. John advises Lisa to hold the camera firmly with both hands and position the dog in the LCD screen.
- 4. The sound *click* is heard.
- 5. Look at the pictures again and tell your partner how to take photos:

Đáp án:

Picture c: select automatic mode, turn power button on.

Picture a: hold camera firmly, position the dog in LCD screen, press zoom button.

Picture d: press shutter button half way down, hear beep sound.

Picture b: press shutter button again fully down, hear click sound, image has been recorded.

To take a photo, first you have to select automatic mode, turn power button on. Then hold camera firmly, position the dog in LCD screen, press zoom button to enlarge or reduce the size of the picture. Now press shutter button half way down and you'll hear beep sound. Finally, press shutter button again fully down, you'll hear click sound; this means the image has been recorded.

III. SPEAKING

Giving Opinions.

A. Nam and his friends are talking about modern equipment. Complete the blanks with the words given in the box.

Đáp án:

Nam: *In* my opinion.....

Hoa: I *would* say that.....

Tuan: To my *mind*,.....

Peter: I *don't believe* that

Alice: As I *see* it,....

Nga: I *would* say.....

b. Work with a partner. Talk about other kinds of devices, using the prompts

Đáp án gợi ý:

1. Ha: What do you think about using a cell phone?

Nam: For me, the cell phone is very convenient. It's small and portable so I can use it to make phone calls or get contact with someone when we are away from home

Ha: I agree with you. That's why the cell phone is very popular today. But do you think that sometimes it can be very annoying.

Nam: That's exactly right, especially when we are at a meeting, in class where the users speak too loud in public.

Ha: That's how I feel. So we have to be careful when using a cell phone in these cases.

2. Thu: What is a digital camera used for?

Linh: I think it is used to capture happy moments with friends and relatives' images.

3. Quỳnh: What do you use an electronic calculator for?

Đức: I use it to do all kinds of calculations quickly and accurately.

4. Khoa: Is a washing machine used to wash all kinds of clothes?

Tung: You can wash most clothes in a washing machine but it is not suitable for washing ao dai's and men's suits.

Khoa: That's true.

1. (As I see it), the cell phone is convenient to make phone calls as it is small and portable. It's smaller and lighter than a desk phone.

2. (I would say) the cell phone is very annoying when its users speak too loud in the public.

3. (I believe that) the digital camera can record people's happy moments and friends' and relatives' images.

4. (To my mind,) the electronic calculator can help students do calculation quickly and accurately.

5. (I would say that) the washing machine isn't suitable for ao dai's and men's suits.

IV. WRITING

a. Put the sentences in the correct orders.

Đáp án gợi ý:

4 2 5 1 3

b. Insert the expressions in Carol's note where appropriate.

Đáp án gợi ý:

1. My vacuum cleaner is very easy to use.
 2. First, don't forget to remove large or sharp objects from the floor to avoid damage to the machine.
 3. Next, plug in the unit and turn the power button on.
 4. Then, start cleaning the floor and furniture.
 5. Finally, make sure to unplug the unit after using.
- c. Write the instructions on how to use a food blender:

Đáp án gợi ý:

It is very easy to use a food blender.

First, place the container on the base and turn it clockwise.

Next, put the food into the container and cover it with its cap.

Make sure to plug in and select the slow speed button. Then press the higher speed button.

If you want to add sugar or salt into the food, remove the cap. After that, don't forget to cover the container with the cap again.

Finally, press the stop button, unplug the machine, and turn the container counterclockwise to remove it from the base.

d. Write the instructions on how to use an electrical device you have at home.

Here are the instructions for using a microwave rice cooker:

First, put the rice into the bowl

Next, pour in the water

After that put the inner lid on.

Then put the outer lid on and make sure to lock it.

Remember to put the cooker into the microwave.

Don't forget it takes you 12 minutes to cook well the rice.

V. LANGUAGE FOCUS

Word study

Prefixes

Prefixes (được gọi là tiền tố hay tiếp đầu ngữ) là một cụm từ được thêm vào trước một từ gốc để tạo thành một từ mới.

Nghĩa của prefixes thường dễ hiểu vì nó rõ ràng cụ thể và không biến đổi nhiều nghĩa một từ này sang một từ khác.

Người ta có thể chia prefixes ra thành từng nhóm cụ thể như sau:

1) Negative prefixes (các tiền tố phủ định)

Một trong những tiền tố được sử dụng nhiều nhất là tiền tố mang ý phủ định. Chúng ta nhận thấy rằng có cả một danh sách dài về các tiền tố phủ định được sử dụng với danh từ, tính từ và động từ:

* un-

Adjective

attractive

clean

comfortable

generous

grateful

healthy

lucky

pleasant

real

safe

selfish

true

Negative Adjective

unattractive

unclean

uncomfortable

ungenerous

ungrateful

unhealthy

unlucky

unpleasant

unreal

unsafe

unselfish

untrue

* dis-

Tiền tố phủ định **dis-** không thông dụng nhiều như tiền tố **un-**. Vấn đề khó khăn cho người học là làm sao để nhớ từ nào dùng **dis**, từ nào dùng **un**. Lại có nhiều điều không nhất quán trong cách sử dụng hai tiền tố này:

Ví dụ:

Chúng ta có danh từ **comfort** và tính từ **comfortable**. Từ mang ý phủ định của **comfort** là **discomfort** trong khi đó từ mang ý phủ định của **comfortable** là **uncomfortable**. Và trong trường hợp của danh từ **belief** chúng ta có thể thành lập hai từ mang ý phủ định cùng nghĩa - **unbelief** hay **disbelief**.

Tiền tố **dis-** thường được sử dụng với danh từ và động từ

- Nouns

advantage

belief

comfort

honor

like

obedience

pleasure

repair

disadvantage

disbelief

discomfort

dishonor

dislike

disobedience

displeasure

disrepair

respect	disrespect
taste	distaste
trust	distrust

-Verbs

agree	disagree
allow	disallow
appear	disappear
believe	disbelieve
connect	disconnect
continue	discontinue
encourage	discourage
like	dislike
locate	dislocate
obey	disobey
please	displease
possess	dispossess

* Các tiền tố phủ định **in-**, **im-**, **ir-**, **il-** có gốc La tinh và được sử dụng với nhiều từ tiếng Anh có gốc tiếng Pháp hoặc tiếng La Tinh. Thông thường người ta thêm **im-** trước chữ **m**, **b** hoặc **p** ; **ir-** được thêm vào trước **r** ; và **il-** được thêm vào trước chữ **l**

Những tiền tố phủ định loại này thường được sử dụng với tính từ (**in-** ; **im-** cũng có sử dụng với danh từ)

*in-

Adjectives

active	inactive
capable	incapable
complete	incomplete
convenient	inconvenient
definite	indefinite
exact	inexact
expert	inexpert
human	inhuman
secure	insecure
sufficient	insufficient
visible	invisible

Nouns

justice	injustice
---------	-----------

*** im-**

Adjectives

mature	immature
moderate	immoderate
mortal	immortal
movable	immovable
patient	impatient
perfect	imperfect
possible	impossible
probable	improbable
proper	improper
pure	impure

Nouns

balance	imbalance
---------	-----------

***ir-**

Adjectives

rational	irrational
regular	irregular
religious	irreligious
responsible	irresponsible

***il-**

Adjectives

legal	illegal
licit	illicit
legible	illegible

***non-**

Tiền tố phủ định **non-** chỉ sử dụng trong một số ít từ. Trước đây người ta thường viết kèm với dấu ngang nối nhưng bây giờ với khuynh hướng mới về cách viết của người Mỹ người ta không còn sử dụng dấu ngang nối nữa. Loại từ này thường xuất hiện nhiều nhất trong các từ kỹ thuật.

Adjectives

alcoholic	nonalcoholic
cooperation	noncooperation
political	nonpolitical
poisonous	nonpoisonous
stop	nonstop
violent	nonviolent

mis-

tiền tố phủ định này thường diễn đạt ý tưởng “sai lạc “ hoặc “ không đúng “. Sau đây là một vài ví dụ:

Verbs

misbehave	misbehave
misdirect	misdirect
misinform	misinform
misinterpret	misinterpret
misjudge	misjudge
mislead	mislead
misplace	misplace
misread	misread
misspell	misspell
mistreat	mistreat
misunderstand	misunderstand
misuse	misuse

Nouns

misalliance	misalliance
misbehavior	misbehavior
mischance	mischance
misconduct	misconduct
misfit	misfit
misfortune	misfortune

2) Các loại tiền tố khác:

Hầu hết các tiền tố khác được sử dụng thông thường trong tiếng Anh đều có nguồn gốc từ tiếng La tinh hay tiếng Hy Lạp và chúng có nghĩa khá rõ ràng. Chúng được sử dụng thoải mái trong ngôn ngữ kỹ thuật và trong việc tạo ra từ mới.

Những tiền tố đó bao gồm:

Prefixes	Meanings	Examples
ante-	before, preceding	antechamber, antecedent, antedate
anti-	against	antigovernment, antiwar
circum-	around	circumnavigate
co-	together, join	co-author, coeducation, co-chairman
contra-	against	contradict, contraindicate
ex-	former	ex-president, ex-member
ex-	out of	expel, export

in-	in, into	inborn, indoors
inter-	between	international, interdepartmental
intra-	within	intrastate, intradepartmental
mal-	bad, wrong	malfunction malpractice
multi-	many	multicolored, multiform
poly-	many	polysyllable, polyglot
post-	after, later	postwar, postgraduate
pre-	before, earlier	prewar, prehistory
pro-	in favour of	prowar, proadministration
re-	again	readmit, recast, refill, rewrite
sub-	under, below	subnormal, subhuman
super-	above, over	superhuman, supernatural
trans-	through, across	transatlantic, transcontinental

a) Match the prefixes in column A with their definition words in column B

Đáp án:

multifunctional, multimedia, counterclockwise, unbelievable, unplug, unlock, uncomfortable

b) Complete the following sentences with the new words you have found in task a

Đáp án:

1. Uncomfortable
2. multimedia
3. unplug
4. counterclockwise, unlock
5. unbelievable
6. multifunctional

Grammar

a) The Present Perfect Passive

Ở câu chủ động, người hay vật ở vị trí chủ ngữ là chủ thể thực hiện hành động. Trái lại trong câu bị động người hay vật ở vị trí chủ ngữ phải nhận chỉ hành động do một tác nhân khác tạo ra.

Người ta sử dụng câu bị động khi muốn nhấn mạnh vào hành động hay người hoặc vật nhận chịu hành động đó chứ không quan tâm người hay vật nào thực hiện hành động đó

Câu bị động được thành lập bằng cách sử dụng thì thích hợp của động từ **to be + past participle** của động từ chính.

Động từ của câu bị động ở thì Present Perfect được thành lập như sau:

has / have + been + past participle of the verb

l.g.: - English **has been taught** in this school since 1960.

- That door **hasn't been used** for twenty years.

- **Have** the plants **been watered** yet?

*Practice:

Make meaningful sentences from the cues, using appropriate active or passive verb form.

Đáp án:

1. I can't find my digital camera. It has been stolen.

2. The old buildings have just been knocked down to build a new supermarket here.

3. My washing machine didn't work yesterday, but it's OK now. It has been repaired.

4. An unknown actor has been chosen to star in a new movie.

5. My new employee has always been told not to play games at work, but he doesn't seem to change.

3) Used to + Base Form of Verb

Used to được sử dụng giống nhau cho tất cả các ngôi

Ở thể khẳng định và phủ định :

I		
She	used to	speaking English in class.
They	didn't use to	travel far from home.

Ở thể nghi vấn:

What did you use to do at night when you were young?

Ở dạng câu trả lời ngắn:

E.g: "Did you use to smoke a lot?"

"Yes, I did"

"No, I didn't."

* Ghi chú:

1) Tuy vậy dạng câu hỏi với **used to** ít được sử dụng. Thường trong trường hợp này người ta sử dụng câu hỏi ở thì quá khứ đơn và câu trả lời được sử dụng với **used to**.

E.g: "Where did you go on holiday when you were young?"

"We used to go to Nha Trang"

2) **Never** thường được sử dụng trong câu phủ định.

I never used to watch TV.

3) Hãy cẩn thận để không nhầm lẫn với **to use** (I **used** a knife to cut the string) và **used to**

(I **used to** cut the roses in the morning)

* **Used to** được sử dụng để diễn tả một thói quen ở quá khứ

I used to get up early but now I don't get up until 8 a.m.

* **Used to** được sử dụng để diễn tả một trạng thái chỉ tồn tại ở quá khứ.

They used to be happy but now they fight all the time.

Practice:

Make meaningful sentences about people around a hundred years ago, using the cues below

Đáp án:

2. People used to travel on horses.

3. People used to work very long hours a week, but they got very low pay.

4. People used to grind rice with a stone grinder to make rice flour.

5. People used to build houses from mud and straw because they didn't have cement.

6. Vietnamese women used to dye their teeth black.

BÀI TẬP Củng Cố UNIT FIVE

A. PHONETICS

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in the same line.

- | | | | | |
|---|----------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1 | A. <u>message</u> | B. <u>damage</u> | C. <u>image</u> | D. <u>teenage</u> |
| 2 | A. <u>transition</u> | B. <u>microwave</u> | C. <u>condition</u> | D. <u>furniture</u> |
| 3 | A. <u>devices</u> | B. <u>images</u> | C. <u>machines</u> | D. <u>passages</u> |
| 4 | A. <u>cook</u> | B. <u>book</u> | C. <u>look</u> | D. <u>school</u> |
| 5 | A. <u>remove</u> | B. <u>record</u> | C. <u>forget</u> | D. <u>order</u> |

II. Choose the word whose stress pattern is different from the rest in each group

- | | | | | |
|----|----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| 6 | A. <u>pressure</u> | B. <u>button</u> | C. <u>language</u> | D. <u>machine</u> |
| 7 | A. <u>lighter</u> | B. <u>reduce</u> | C. <u>soften</u> | D. <u>comfort</u> |
| 8 | A. <u>enjoyable</u> | B. <u>comfortable</u> | C. <u>believable</u> | D. <u>occasional</u> |
| 9 | A. <u>technology</u> | B. <u>calculator</u> | C. <u>explanation</u> | D. <u>conversation</u> |
| 10 | A. <u>media</u> | B. <u>monitor</u> | C. <u>appliance</u> | D. <u>camera</u> |

B. GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY.

These are incomplete sentences. Circle A or B, C, D as your best choice to complete each sentence or exchange.

11. Those who study maths need a _____ machine.

A. calculator

B. calculation C. calculating D. calculate

2. Computers have become a part of our _____ lives.
A. weekly B. monthly C. yearly D. daily
3. A cell phone _____ to talk to people when you are away from home.
A. is used for B. is used C. uses D. used
4. Nearly every household in this area has an _____ cooker
A. electricity B. electrical C. electrified D. electric
5. What makes a computer _____?
A. a such miraculous device B. a so miraculous device
C. such miraculous device D. such a miraculous device.
6. The microwave oven helps _____ housewives' cooking time.
A. reduce B. lower C. increase D. lessen
7. Each employee in this office will have a computer for their _____ use only.
A. private B. personal C. own D. alone
8. With the development of _____ technology we can now send messages from one computer to another.
A. inform B. information C. informant D. informative
9. The development of information technology can help us do many things now EXCEPT for:
A. receiving programs from other countries
B. holding long distance meetings
C. designing houses, bridges, gardens and buildings.
D. bringing up our children.
10. Mai: " _____?"
Nam: "It is used to keep the air cool or warm when it is hot or cold".
A. What is a fax machine used for?
B. What is an electric cooker used for?
C. What is a camcorder used for?
D. What is an air conditioner used for?
1. We will be grateful for _____ you provide us.
A. whenever B. whatever C. wherever D. whoever
2. A _____ is used for medical diagnosis.
A. digital camera B. computer C. blender D. CT scanner
3. _____ the Web is a very popular favourite pastime.
A. Browsing B. Using C. Scanning D. Connecting
4. Vietnamese women _____ proud of their black teeth.
A. are B. used to be C. have been D. will be

25. The material used to build houses in Vietnam more than hundred years ago was _____

A. brick

B. cement

C. steel

D. mud

C. READING.

Read the following passage carefully and do the tasks that follow:

COMPUTER

Imagine that you are studying English at a small college in the midwestern United States. The local newspaper rarely has news about your native country. In fact, it prints very little foreign news, but this does not bother you at all. You sit comfortably in your apartment, turn on your personal computer, and ask for the foreign news. The screen is immediately filled with news from all over the world.

Computers have created an information "superhighway." Today, computers can work together- they can network with each other. The worldwide computer network is called the Internet. Using the Internet, you can find all kinds of information and news from people and countries around the world.

The computer is a wonderful machine. It is the most important invention since the type of engine used in cars. It has had a great effect on science, industry, business, medicine, and education. Soon it will touch the lives of everyone, even people in distant villages. The computer is a revolutionary invention.

The oldest kind of computer is the abacus, which has been used in China since the sixth century. In the 17th century an adding machine was invented. The first large, modern computer was built in 1937. Computers improve quickly. A few years later a computer could do 5,000 additions per second. Now the computations are so fast that they are measured in nanoseconds. (A nanosecond is one billionth of a second)

Today all computers are stored-program computers; that is, they have a processing unit, arithmetic and logic unit, and a memory. Computers are getting smaller and smaller, and computing faster and faster. Even in a very large computer, the part that does the actual computing is about the size of the end of a finger.

Computers can do all kinds of work. When someone buys something in a department store, a clerk puts information about the sale into a computer. During the night the computer system works on the information from all the sales that day. In the morning the manager can print out a report on everything that was sold and also on everything that must be reordered.

All the information we have about moon rocks is computerized. A scientist can talk to the computer about the rocks, and the computer answers the questions. It is just like talking to another scientist.

Another computer program has information about several kinds of diseases. A doctor can talk to the computer and explain what is wrong with a patient.

The computer explains what to do. If the doctor asks why, the computer goes through its stored information and explains exactly why. Again, it is just like talking to another human being.

Police stations have terminals that are connected to the National Crime Information Center in Washington, D.C. A police officer who stops a car can radio the station and learn from the computer if the car is stolen.

Telephone companies and banks use computers. In some factories, computerized robots do the work that people used to do. In an automobile factory, when a different type of car comes along the line, a robot can change the type of work that it is doing, just as a human would do. Airline offices use computers, too. An employee types information about flights and reservations and gets an immediate reply.

A revolutionary change in human life occurred when early humans began farming. People didn't develop writing systems until hundreds of thousands of years later. Yet in a little more than 50 years people have developed computers that can do most of the things that humans can do! Such progress is a little frightening. Will we use computers to control people and to make wars even more terrible than they are now? Or will we use them to improve the quality of life for all humanity? The students of today will have to decide how to use the computers of tomorrow.

Understanding the Reading

A. Comprehension Questions

Answer the questions about the reading

1. In what areas of modern life are computers used?
2. What parts do all computers have today?
3. How are computers used in medicine?
4. How are they used in business?
5. How are they used in police work?
6. How could computers be dangerous to humanity?

B. Details

Choose the letter of the best answer

1. The computer is the most important invention since
A. farming B. marketing C. writing D. the car engine
2. A stored-program computer has a (n)
A. brain B. robot C. memory D. abacus
3. The part of the computer that.....is the size of the end of a finger.
A. prints the information B. stores the information
C. gives a reply D. does the computing

☞ Many aspects of our daily lives have been changed as a result of the development of computers.

34. Newspapers and magazines on the internet have made us more informative. (because of)

☞ _____

35. The using of the internet has made world communication easier. (as a result of)

☞ _____

36. The success of this company has attracted more customers. (due to)

☞ _____

37. The use of electrical device like washing machine has freed women from spending too much time on housework. (through)

☞ _____

38. The hot weather of this year has increased the sale of air conditioners (by)

☞ _____

DÁP ÁN

UNIT FIVE

A. PHONETICS

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in the same line.

1 D.teenage 2 B. microwave 3 C. machines

4 D. school 5 A. remove

II. Choose the word whose stress pattern is different from the rest in each group.

6 D. machine 7 B. reduce 8 B. comfortable

9 A.technology 10 C.appliance

B. GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY.

These are incomplete sentences. Circle A, B, C or D as your best choice to complete each sentence or exchange.

11 C. calculating 12 D. daily 13 B. is used 14 D. electric

15 D. such a miraculous device. 16 A. reduce 17 B. personal

18 B. information 19 D. bringing up our children.

20 D. What is an air conditioner used for? 21 B. whatever

22 D. CT scanner 23 A.Browsing 24 B used to be 25 D. mud

C. READING.

A. Comprehension questions:

1. Computers are used in science, industry, business, medicine and education.
2. A processing unit, an arithmetic and logic unit, and a memory.
3. Computers help a doctor find out what is wrong with a patient
4. Computers can record what is sold and what needs to be recorded.
5. Computers that are connected to the National Crime Information Center in Washington, D.C can give the police officers information about stolen cars
6. Computers can be dangerous if they are used to control people or to make terrible wars

B. Details

1. d 2. c 3. d 4. c 5. b

C. Main ideas

- 1, 3

D. WRITING.

I

27. Set the cooking time.
28. Cooking time depends on the amount of food. If you use double the amount of food, it will take twice as long to cook.
29. Thin items of food cook more quickly than thick ones
30. Frozen foods will take longer to cook than non-frozen ones.
31. Check the food regularly during cooking. Always undercook rather overcook it because the food can easily be put back for further cooking.
32. Foods that contain solids and liquids should be stirred occasionally to distribute the heat away.
33. When food is removed from the oven it continues to cook for a short time. Wait a few minutes before eating

II. THE PRESENT PERFECT PASSIVE

34. We have been made more informative because of newspapers and magazines on the internet.
35. World communication has been made easier as a result of the using of the internet.
36. More customers have been attracted due to the success of this company.
37. Women have been freed from spending too much time on housework through the use of electrical device like washing machine.
38. The sale of air conditioners has been increased by the hot weather of this year

UNIT 6

SCHOOL OUTDOOR ACTIVITIES

1. READING

Before you read

1. *Look at the pictures. What do you think the people in the pictures are doing? Where are they?*

Đáp án:

- a. Swimming and playing at a theme park.
- b. Hiking in the mountains.
- c. Camping at a campsite.
- d. Playing soccer in a playground.

2. *Read what some people say about some activities. Then match each of them with one of the pictures.*

Đáp án:

1. Chân tôi mỏi như mặc dầu tôi mang một đôi giày đi bộ tốt và cầm theo một cây gậy. Rủi thay tôi quên đem theo bản đồ. Nếu tôi có đem theo bản đồ giờ đây chúng tôi có thể đi về bằng con đường tắt.

b (legs, hiking boots, walking stick)

2. Quả bóng cuốn hút tất cả chúng tôi. Thật vui khi bạn chơi bóng với những người khác. Nếu bây giờ tôi không bận việc tôi sẽ chạy đi chơi bóng ngay lập tức.

d (ball, soccer game)

3. Chúng tôi đang thích thú hát, múa quanh lửa trại thì trời bắt đầu đổ mưa. Nếu trời không mưa chúng tôi đã ở lại đó suốt đêm.

c (dancing, singing, campfire, night)

4. Chúng tôi có thể tận hưởng được nhiều trò chơi dưới nước và những dịch vụ ở đó. Môn chơi hồi hộp nhất là trượt ống nước. Chúng tôi sẽ đi đến công viên đó tuần tới. Nếu chúng tôi khởi hành sớm, chúng tôi sẽ có nhiều thời gian để chơi những môn chơi hứng thú khác.

a (water games, thrilling game, slide through the pipes, park)

2. Reading text

Bài dịch đề nghị

Đi cắm trại

Cắm trại là một hoạt động giúp cho người ta tạm thời sống ngoài trời trong một khoảng thời gian nào đó. Những người đi cắm trại tham gia vào các hoạt động như câu cá, săn bắn, bơi lội, ngắm nhìn động vật hay phong cảnh hoang

dã, nghiên cứu thực vật, và chụp hình cảnh vật thiên nhiên. Nó cho chúng ta những lợi ích về mặt thể chất khi chúng ta tham gia vào việc đi tới, đi lui,, vòn quanh khu vực cắm trại. Nhiều người tin rằng cắm trại làm cho thanh niên cảm thấy tự tin hơn.

Mọi người khắp nơi trên thế giới đều thích đi bộ vào những khu vực cắm trại còn hoang sơ. Hoạt động này được gọi là mang ba lô đi bộ đường dài bởi vì nó bao gồm cả việc mang một ba lô trên lưng chứa đựng những vật dụng cần thiết cho buổi cắm trại như lều, túi ngủ, thức ăn và áo quần. Mang ba lô đi bộ đường dài rất thích hợp cho những ai có tình trạng sức khỏe tốt bởi vì có thể họ phải đi đến vài dặm đường.

Chìa khóa cho một buổi cắm trại thật sự thú vị là phải có hoạch định kỹ hoạch. Quyết định chọn địa điểm cắm trại phải phù hợp sở thích của mỗi người, nhưng lập kế hoạch cho chuyến đi trước lúc khởi hành sẽ giúp những trại viên tránh các tai nạn đáng tiếc. Nhiều tình huống khó chịu như thời tiết xấu, những vết thương hoặc khu vực trại quá đông đúc sẽ không làm bạn bị bối rối nếu mọi thành viên đều có chuẩn bị tốt.

a. The sentences can be true or false. Check the appropriate boxes and then correct the false statements.

Đáp án:

1. T
2. F (it also provides physical benefits)
3. T
4. F (because it involves carrying a backpack which contains...)
5. F (for those who are in good physical condition)
6. T
7. F (it can be an unpleasant situation)

b. Find the words in the text with the given meanings:

Đáp án:

- | | | | |
|----------------|--------------|---------|---------------|
| 1. temporarily | 3. hiking | 5. gear | 7. preference |
| 2. wildlife | 4. essential | 6. key | 8. alarming |

c. Discuss in groups:

What benefits does camping bring you?

Đáp án gợi ý:

1) Camping can bring us a lot of benefits. First of all, we can enjoy outdoor activities such as fishing, swimming, hunting or wildlife watching. Next, by being outdoors we can learn more about plants, animals and geographical features of places. Camping also provides us physical benefits, makes us feel active and more confident. Going camping in a group can help improve our social skills and help us get on well with others.

2) Benefits of camping:

Being more confident

Learning to make good planning for a camping trip

Knowing more about nature and how to survive in nature

Tightening friendship and heightening cooperation spirit

II. LISTENING

a. Listen to some students getting ready for some outdoor activities. Check the things they are going to do:

Đáp án:

1. Play soccer.

2. go on a boat trip

3. go camping.

4. go swimming.

5. go climbing.

6. go to a theme park.

b. Listen to some students talking about the things they have done. Number the pictures from 1 to 6:

Đáp án gợi ý:

a. go camping/ go on a camping trip.

b. going for a picnic.

c. swimming in the sea/ sunbathing/ going to the beach.

d. climbing a mountain.

e. playing soccer/ playing a game.

f. diving/ swimming in a pool/ going for a swim.

Listen and number the pictures from 1 to 6:

Đáp án:

a. 3

b. 2

c. 1

d. 5

e. 4

f. 6

C. Listen again. Write the names of the activities and check the appropriate box:

Đáp án:

Activities	All was fine	Not all was fine	Nothing was fine
1. going to the beach	✓		
2. going for a picnic			✓
3. going on a camping trip		✓	
4. playing a game	✓		
5. climbing a mountain		✓	
6. going for a swim	✓		

d) Tell your partner about an outdoor activity you have recently taken part in and how much you enjoyed it:

Đáp án gợi ý:

Last Sunday, our class went camping at a lake not very far from our school. All of us were very excited and we arrived at school early. A bus took us to the camping site and we were very happy to find that it was not very crowded. We quickly set up the tents and then walked round to take pictures. We ran up and down the hills, played games and went back to our tent for lunch. Our meal was simple, including rice, meat, fish, and vegetables, but it was a good meal because by then we were all so tired and hungry. After taking a short rest, our teacher took us into a small forest nearby and gave us an interesting lesson about some plants found there. We all liked it and admired the wonders of nature. Then we went back to the campsite to enjoy some fruit, cakes, and candies. We all had fun and felt sorry when our teacher told us it was time to go back home. As for me, it was such a wonderful camping day and I will never forget what I learnt from the interesting lesson in the forest.

III SPEAKING

a. Work in groups. You are planning an excursion. Discuss where to go, how long to stay there, what to bring and what to do there.

Đáp án gợi ý:

1)

Camping plan

Tan: I'm so excited! We are going to have 3 days off.

What about going camping at the Valley of Love?

Minh: Sounds great! It's not very far from here so all of us can go there by bicycle.

Nguyen: Why don't we stay there overnight?

Tan: I think a one-day camping will be better.

Many of us aren't allowed to stay the night away from home.

Minh: That's it. One day will be enough. But what are we going to do there?

Nguyen: Lots of things. We can sing, dance, swim, play games, go fishing and go boating.

Tan: That sounds like fun! What should we bring with us?

Minh: Food for lunch, cakes, candies, fruit and water.

Tan: And don't forget to bring a raincoat. It may rain in the afternoon.

2)

S1: What about going to Vung Tau?

S2: Great. What will we bring with us?

S1: Swimsuits and towels, food and beverage

12: OK. Let's do that.

13: Why don't we go to Suoi Tien Theme Park?

14: That's a good idea but it's very far from our house and too crowded there at this time of the year.

13: How about going to Dam Sen Park?

14: That's a good idea. How long will we stay there and what will we do there?

13: All day, we'll have great fun driving bumping cars and riding roller coasters and merry-go-rounds. Also we can go swimming or have a picnic there.

14: Yes. Let's do that.

1) Discuss what five essential things to bring with you on an overnight camping trip. Give reasons why you think they are necessary.

Đáp án gợi ý:

1)

Nga: Have you thought of things to bring on our next overnight camping trip?

Don: I haven't thought about it yet. But I guess we should bring a lot of food. We can be very hungry at night.

Nga: I agree with you but I think we should bring a lot of water. Clean water can help prevent some diseases.

My: What about flashlights? We will need them when we walk round at night.

Don: Yes, and don't you think that we should bring a tent? Spending a night outdoors will be wonderful.

Nga: Sure. Don't forget to bring a big and good one because it might rain.

My: Maybe we will need some money. Accidents can happen any time and money can help to solve them.

2)

Things to bring:

- sleeping bags
- flashlight
- foods and drinks
- a tent
- clothing

11: For an overnight camping, we need to bring sleeping bags and a tent.

12: A flashlight is also useful to bring in case we need to go out of the tent.

13: I think we should take along foods and drinks. If not we would be very hungry and thirsty.

11: And remember to bring warm clothes because it might be cold at night.

IV. WRITING

a. Read the letters and match them with the replies for confirmation.

Đáp án:

a. 2

b. 3

c.1

b. Rearrange the following sentences to make a reply to an invitation letter.

Đáp án:

2 - 6 - 5 - 7 - 3 - 4 - 1

c) You have received a letter from your friend inviting you to go camping at Nam Cat Tien National Park next weekend. Write a confirmation letter.

Đáp án gợi ý:

1)

Dear Thư,

Thank you for inviting me to Nam Cat Tien National park. I would love to go with you because I have never been there before. I will bring fruit and water and will be at your house at 7.30 on Saturday. Please let me know if you need some help.

With love,

Thao.

2)

Dear Vinh

Thank you very much for inviting me to your birthday party. I will certainly come. I am looking forward to meeting you soon. I am sure we will have a great time.

With best wishes,

Nam

V. LANGUAGE FOCUS

Word study

Words That Go Together

a. Circle one word or phrase that does not go with the verb in the box

Đáp án:

sightseeing			games		
camping		hiking	tennis		skiing
	GO			PLAY	
soccer		swimming	cards		the piano

the way	a soccer game
the bus	a medal
LOSE	a competition
weight	WIN
the match	a race
money	John

Find more combinations with the verbs above

Đáp án gợi ý:

GO:

Gerunds thường được sử dụng với động từ **go**. Những nhóm từ dùng với GO sau đây thường dùng để chỉ các hoạt động giải trí

Sau đây là các nhóm từ **go+ gerund** thường gặp

go	biking	go	jogging
go	boating	go	riding
go	bowling	go	running
go	bungee jumping	go	sailing
go	camping	go	scuba diving
go	canoeing	go	shopping
go	caroling	go	sightseeing
go	climbing	go	skateboarding
go	cycling	go	skating
go	dancing	go	skiing
go	drinking	go	sledding
go	driving	go	surfing
go	fishing	go	swimming
go	golfing	go	trick-or-treating
go	hiking	go	window shopping
go	hunting		

*Chú ý:

1) **go+ gerund** không phải thường được sử dụng cho tất cả các môn thể thao. Người ta không nói go basketballing / go baseballing / etc.

Thay vào đó người ta sử dụng cụm từ **go play**

e.g: go play basketball / badminton / football / handball / pool / soccer / tennis

2) Một vài nhóm từ **go+ gerund** để diễn tả một ý nghĩa đặc biệt

e.g.:

go **biking** = (usually) go mountain-bike riding or go motorcycle riding

go **cycling** = go bicycle riding (rather formal!)

go **driving** = drive for enjoyment--not because you want to travel to a particular place

go riding = go horseback riding

3) Một vài nhóm từ **go+ gerund** được sử dụng ở một vài thời điểm cụ thể trong năm:

e.g.:

go caroling = travel from house to house singing Christmas songs (at Christmas (only)

go trick-or-treating = travel from house to house wearing masks and costumes and asking for treats (children at Halloween).

4) Một vài nhóm từ **go+ gerund** được thêm từ để làm cho nghĩa cụ thể hơn:

e.g.:

go hunting ---> go deer hunting / dove hunting / duck hunting / rabbit hunting / squirrel hunting etc.

go fishing ---> go bass fishing / deep-sea fishing / trout fishing etc.

go climbing ---> go mountain climbing / rock climbing

5) Người ta sử dụng **go+ gerund** cho những hoạt động giải trí vì thế người không nói go working hoặc go studying.....

PLAY

_Play the guitar / tricks / jokes

LOSE

-Lose one's life / one's nerve / a game / a race / interest

WIN

-Win one's heart/ the lottery/ a battle/ an election

b.Complete the sentences with the verbs provided.

Đáp án:

1. play

4. lost

7. miss

10. lost

2. went

5. missed

8. beats

11. gone

3. won

6. beats

9. playing

12. win

Grammar

WILL - BE GOING TO- THE PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

*Chúng ta sử dụng **will** để nói về những niềm tin, quan niệm, hy vọng hoặc suy đoán sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai và nó thường được sử dụng với một **time expression** trong tương lai.

One day people **will travel** to Mars

I hope he **will come** on time.

I think you **will succeed**.

Chúng ta có thể thêm từ **perhaps, probably, or definitely** để chỉ mức độ chắc chắn về điều chúng ta suy đoán.

Perhaps it will rain tomorrow.

Will cũng thường được sử dụng để diễn tả một quyết định đưa ra vào lúc nói hay một lời hứa.

* Chúng ta sử dụng **be going to** để nói về kế hoạch hay dự định. Kế hoạch đó có thể ở tương lai gần hoặc xa

I am going to do a lot of work this evening.

I am going to travel abroad next month.

Chúng ta cũng sử dụng **be going to** để diễn tả một dự đoán chắc chắn sẽ xảy ra dựa vào chứng cứ ở hiện tại..

Look out! Those books are going to fall!

* Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn (**Present continuous**) dùng để diễn tả

- một sự việc đang xảy ra vào lúc nói

I can't answer the phone. I'm having a bath.

- một hành động hay một sự việc đang xảy ra ở một thời điểm không nhất thiết vào lúc nói.

Mary is a teacher but now she is spending her summer holiday in Italy.

- một dự tính sẽ thực hiện trong một tương lai gần.

What are you doing tonight?

- một hành động của ai đó gây bức mình hoặc khó chịu cho người nói (trong trường hợp này nó thường được sử dụng chung với các trạng từ như **always, constantly, continuously, forever**).

She is always losing her keys.

He is constantly talking in class.

* So sánh **Will** và **Be going to**

a) Nói về những hành động tương lai:

Chúng ta dùng cả **will** lẫn **going to** để nói về những hành động tương lai, nhưng có sự khác biệt rõ ràng

Hãy xem xét tình huống mẫu sau

Xe đạp của Helen bị bể bánh. Cô ấy kể cho cha mình nghe.

Helen: My bicycle has a flat tyre. Can you repair it for me?

Father: Okay, but I can't do it now. I'll repair it tomorrow.

* **Will:** Chúng ta dùng **will** khi chúng ta quyết định làm điều gì đó ngay vào lúc nói. Trước đó người nói chưa quyết định làm. Trước khi Helen kể cho cha cô ấy nghe, ông ta chưa biết gì về chuyện bể bánh xe.

Sau đó, mẹ của Helen nói với chồng bà ta.

Mother: Can you repair Helen's bicycle? It has a flat tyre.

Father: Yes, I know. She told me. I'm going to repair it tomorrow.

* **Be Going to:** Chúng ta dùng **be going to** khi chúng ta đã quyết định tru đó làm một điều gì. Cha của Helen đã quyết định sửa chiếc xe đạp trước khi ông ấy nói với ông ấy.

Sau đây là một ví dụ khác:

- Tom đang nấu cơm khi anh bất chợt phát hiện ra rằng không có muối:

Tom: Ann, we haven't got any salt.

Ann: Oh, haven't we? I'll get some from the shop then.

(She decides at the time of speaking).

- Trước khi ra khỏi nhà, Ann nói với Jim:

Ann: I'm going to get some salt from the shop.

(she has already decided) Can I get you anything, Jim?

b) * **Nói về điều gì sẽ xảy ra (dự đoán những sự việc tương lai)**

Chúng ta dùng cả **will** lẫn **be going to** để nói về điều mà chúng ta ng sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai:

- Do you think Tom will get the job?

- Oh dear, it's already 4 o'clock. We're going to be late

* Chúng ta dùng **be going to** (chứ không dùng **will**) khi có một tình huống hiện tại cho thấy một việc chắc chắn sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai (nhất là tương lai gần).

- Look at those black clouds. It's going to rain (the clouds are there now)

- I feel terrible, I think I'm going to be sick (I feel terrible now)

* Ngoài trừ những tình huống như trên, trong những tình huống khác tốt hơ ta nên dùng **will**

- Ann will probably arrive at about 8 o'clock

- I think Tom will like the present you bought for him

* **So sánh The Present Progressive và Be going to**

* Cả hai đều được sử dụng để diễn tả những kế hoạch và những sắp xếp công việc. Trong trường hợp này cả hai đều có thể thay thế cho nhau.

I am going to have/ am having a party on Friday.

* Tuy vậy, **be going to** cho chúng ta thấy rằng hành động đó chưa hoàn thành vẫn còn là một kế hoạch. Trong khi đó thì hiện tại tiếp diễn cho ta thấy rằng hành động đó chắc chắn xảy ra hơn với trạng từ chỉ thời gian hoặc nơi chốn.

Linh **is going to have** driving lesson soon. (no specific time)

Linh **is having** her driving lesson this afternoon. (fixed time)

a) Complete the sentences using **will** or **be going to**, as appropriate

Đáp án:

1. will/ is going to

2. am going to

3. will

4. are going to; will

5. will

) Complete the sentences using the present progressive or be going to, as appropriate

Đáp án:

- | | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1. am going to learn | 2. are leaving | 3. am going to see |
| 4. are... going to do | 5. are having | 6. is playing |
| 7. am having | 8. am not working | |

) Choose the correct answer to fill in each blank:

Đáp án:

- | | | |
|---------------------|-------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. will be | 2. B. am going to | 3. B. will help |
| 4. A. are you going | 5. A. is going to leave | |

BÀI TẬP Củng Cố

UNIT SIX

A. PHONETICS

1. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in the same line.

- | | | | |
|---------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. A. camping | B. matches | C. status | D. camper |
| 2. A. tennis | B. picnic | C. campfire | D. picture |
| 3. A. theme | B. bend | C. tent | D. hen |
| 4. A. music | B. campsite | C. physics | D. preserve |
| 5. A. food | B. cook | C. noon | D. school |

II. Choose the word whose stress pattern is different from the rest in each group.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|
| 6. A. disagreement | B. confirmation | C. combination | D. activity |
| 7. A. attendance | B. exercise | C. museum | D. importance |
| 8. A. election | B. tomorrow | C. overnight | D. instructor |
| 9. A. soccer | B. picnic | C. belief | D. hiking |
| 10. A. essential | B. physical | C. possible | D. frightening |

B. GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY.

These are incomplete sentences. Circle A or B, C, D as your best choice to complete each sentence or exchange.

11. Camping is a(n) _____ in which people live outdoors temporarily.

- | | | | |
|-----------|-------------|-------------|--------------|
| A. action | B. movement | C. activity | D. operation |
|-----------|-------------|-------------|--------------|

12. _____ is best suited for those who are in good physical condition.

- | | | | |
|----------------|------------|---------------|------------|
| A. Backpacking | B. Jogging | C. Picnicking | D. Fishing |
|----------------|------------|---------------|------------|

13. Camping not only _____ your health but also makes you feel confident

- A. hardens B. supports C. weakens D. strengthens

14. A decision on _____ to camp depends on personal preference.

- A. what B. where C. which D. why

15. _____ going to the Valley of love this weekend?

- A. What 's B. Why don't we C. Let's D. What about

16. A: "How about going fishing this afternoon?"

B: "_____"

- A. Sounds terrible. I'd love to B. Yes, let's do that.
C. Why not? D. Shall we?

17. "What should we bring with us for our swimming this afternoon?"

"_____"

- A. Swimsuits, shampoo and towels
B. Swimsuits, a tent and towels .
C. A walking stick, shampoo and towels
D. Swimsuits, shampoo and sunglasses

18. Careful planning helps campers avoid _____.

- A. difficulties B. trouble C. obstacles D. accidents

19. I 'm sorry I cannot pick you up. My bike is _____

- A. out of work B. out of time C. out of date D. out of order

20. We _____ a picnic this weekend. Would you like to come?

- A. have B. are going to have
C. will have D. have had

21. _____ we got to the place, it began to rain heavily

- A. Since B. Before C. Until D. Just as

22. The weather is so hot. Why don't we go _____ this afternoon?

- A. camping B. swimming C. hiking D. jogging

23. Don't forget to bring a map of the area in case we can _____

- A. lose the way B. miss the bus
C. go camping D. lose the money

24. He _____ you if you tell the truth.

- A. is killing B. is going to kill C. will kill D. kills

25. There isn't a cloud in the sky. It _____ a fine day

- A. is going to be B. will be C. has to be D. is

3. READING.

Read the following passage carefully and do the tasks that follow:

A DAY OUT

For the last few months I have spent every Saturday in my flat and have done nothing more exciting than work at home, read the newspaper and watch television. I had begun feeling bored with this and so, last weekend I thought I would do something different. I rang up several of my friends and we decided to go to London for the day. I was really excited as I hadn't been to London since I was ten. We decided to go by coach as this was by far the cheapest means of transport that was available even though it meant that we needed to get up very early. Once in London we decided to take a sightseeing tour as we wanted to see some of the famous buildings. After the tour we bought some sandwiches and ate them in a small park. In the afternoon two of us went shopping and the others went to the theatre. We met up again at 6.30 p.m. and went to a small restaurant in Soho. The meal was really good but, unfortunately, it took much longer than we had expected. We had to get a taxi back to the coach station. Luckily, we got there just two minutes before our coach left.

26) Find words in the passage which mean:

- a) a bus which carries passengers over long distances. _____
- b) visiting the sights of a place as a tourist. _____
- c) ready to be used _____

27) What has the writer done every Saturday?

28) What is the advantage and disadvantage of travelling to London by coach?

29) How long did it take them to finish their trip in London?

30) What did they do in London?

31) Where did they have lunch?

32) How did they get back to the coach station? Why?

33) The writer and his friends' purpose of visiting London is _____

- a) having good meals. b) going shopping
- c) going sightseeing d) going to the theater

34) Find out details which prove that they didn't want to spend too much money for the trip

D. WRITING.

In these sentences, each one has four underlined words or phrases marked A, B, C, and D. Choose the one word or phrase that must be changed in order for the sentence to be correct by circling letter A, B, C, D.

35) He often plays the tennis whenever he has time

A B C D

36) Attendance needs to confirm for our arrangements.

A B C D

37) We need some matches for lighting the stove and make the campfire

A B C D

38). Camping not only strengthens your health but also makes

A B C

you feel confidence.

D

39 If it hadn't been for the rain, we would stay there for the night.

A B C D

40). Nga said that their excursion to Cuc Phuong National Park

A B

turned out to be a disaster so most of the things they did went wrong

C D

B. Complete the second sentence so that it has similar meaning to the first sentence

41). There's a party at my house next weekend.

I _____ next weekend

42) Do you have plan for Saturday night?

What are _____ Saturday night?

43) Our meeting is tomorrow.

We are _____ tomorrow.

44) He would like to become a doctor so he is studying medicine now.

He is _____ doctor.

45) I am not sure about his success.

I don't think _____.

Keys: Unit SIX

A. PHONETICS

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in the same line.

1C. status 2 C. campfire 3 A. theme 4 B. campsite 5 B. cook

II. Choose the word whose stress pattern is different from the rest in each group.

3 D. unfortunate 7 B. exercise 8 C. overnight 9 C. belief 10 A. essential

B. GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY.

These are incomplete sentences. Circle A, B, C or D as your best choice to complete each sentence or exchange.

11 C. activity 12 A. Backpacking 13 D. strengthens 14 B. where

15 D. What about 16 B. Yes, let's do those.

17 A. Swimsuits, shampoo and towels 18 B. trouble 19 D. out of order

20 B. are going to have 21 D. Just as 22 B. swimming

23 A. lose the way 24 C. will kill 25 A. is going to be

C. READING.

Read the following passage carefully and do the tasks that follow:

26) Find words in the passage which mean:

a) a bus which carries passengers over long distances = coach

b) visiting the sights of a place as a tourist = sightseeing

c) ready to be used = available

27) What has the writer done every Saturday?

Working at home, reading the newspaper and watching television

28) What is the advantage and disadvantage of travelling to London by coach?

The advantage of travelling to London by coach is that they could save money because this was the cheapest means of transport that was available. However, travelling to London by coach took them more time

29) How long did it take them to finish their trip in London?

Only one day

30) What did they do in London?

They took a sightseeing tour to see some of the famous buildings. Two went shopping and the others went to the theatre. They also went to a small restaurant in Soho to have dinner.

31) Where did they have lunch?

- In a small park

32) How did they get back to the coach station? Why?

By taxi because they didn't want to miss the coach back to their home town

- 33) The writer and his friends' purpose of visiting London is _____
- a) having good meals.
 - b) going shopping
 - c) going sightseeing
 - d) going to the theater
- 34) Find out details which prove that they didn't want to spend too much money for the trip
- a) They travelled by coach, the cheapest means of transport
 - b) For lunch they bought some sandwiches and ate them in a small park
 - c) They weren't interested in going shopping (only two did)
 - d) They had to get a taxi back to the coach station (They didn't want to take a taxi but they had to)

D. WRITING.

A In these sentences, each one has four underlined words or phrase marked A, B, C, and D. Choose the one word or phrase that must be changed in order for the sentence to be correct by circling letter A or B, C, D.

- 35 B the tennis → tennis
- 36 B needs to confirm → needs to be confirmed
- 37 D make → making
- 38 D confidence → confident
- 39 C would stay → would have stayed
- 40 D so → because

B Make meaningful sentences with the words given

- 41. I am going to have a party next week
- 42. What are you doing on Saturday night?
- 43. We are meeting tomorrow
- 44. He is going to be a doctor
- 45. I don't think he will surely succeed

UNIT 7

THE MASS MEDIA

READING

Before you read

a) Name the things you see in the pictures:

Đáp án:

radio set, cassette recorder, TV set, videotape, filmstrip, newspapers, books, multimedia computers

b) Read the text and answer the questions:

Bài dịch gợi ý:

Nhật báo, tạp chí và sách là những phương tiện truyền thông qua in ấn. Các tờ nhật báo là một trong những nguồn phát tin về các sự kiện chính xảy ra trên khắp thế giới.

Radio và TV truyền thông tin và các tiết mục giải trí đến công chúng. Điện ảnh không những nhằm mục đích giải trí mà còn mang tính giáo dục nữa.

Các chương trình đa phương tiện trên vi tính giúp học sinh cách thức để lĩnh hội được một vài đề tài chuyên biệt. Khi chúng ta sử dụng Internet, chúng ta có thể gửi đi và thu nhận thông tin một cách thật nhanh chóng.

Đáp án:

1. Newspapers, magazines, and books.

2. (Optional).

3. (Optional) (music, news, movies, documentaries, etc.)

4. (Optional) (adventure, love, action, cartoon, etc.).

5. A computer may help us learn many subjects or get access to the Internet and get information quickly.

. How often do you do these things?

Đáp án gợi ý:

a) I read a newspaper everyday to know what happens in my country as well as all over the world. Like all members in my family, we all watch our favourite programs on TV every night. On Sundays, we often spend the whole afternoon watching films. There are so many good films for us to choose from now. I sometimes listen to the radio for some popular songs in the evening. Computer plays an important part in my life nowadays. I use it everyday to check and send mail, search for information, to play games or chat with my friends.

b)

I do them almost every day. (or: three times a week...)

I read a newspaper every day.

I watch television every evening.

Reading text

a. Read the headlines. What do you think they tell us about?

(Optional)

Đáp án gợi ý:

1. BACK IN THE AIR? (Maybe it is about something which is uncertain/ undecided..)
2. BACK ONSTAGE. (Maybe it is about the coming back to the stage of singer, comedian, actor or actress)
3. BEAUTY OR CLOTHES. (Maybe it is about a fashion show, some fashion girls...)
4. JOURNEY INTO SPACE. (Maybe it is about the launching of a spacecraft into space...)
5. POP SUPERSTAR MAKES GUINNESS BOOK OF WORLD RECORDS (Maybe it is about a very famous superstar who makes a Guinness book selling his /her records)
6. SEEK BUSINESS OPPORTUNITIES. (pieces of information for those who are seeking business opportunities)
7. TAKE IT WITH YOU. (Maybe it is pieces of news about something you need to carry with you all the time e.g. pens, key rings, tissue...)

b. Match five of the headlines above with the following pieces of news:

Đáp án:

A 3. BEAUTY OR CLOTHES.

B 5. POP SUPERSTAR MAKES GUINNESS BOOK OF WORLD RECORDS.

C 1. BACK IN THE AIR?

D 6. SEEK BUSINESS OPPORTUNITIES.

E 7. TAKE IT WITH YOU.

4) Bài dịch gợi ý:

A. Sắc đẹp hay áo quần.

Nhiều chương trình thời trang hay các cuộc thi quá chú ý việc giới thiệu sắc đẹp của người mẫu hơn là áo quần của họ. Tuy nhiên, các nhà thiết kế thời trang khẳng định cho rằng tất cả các người mẫu đều ấn dấu sắc đẹp của họ bằng các trang phục họ trình bày. (đều trưng bày cái đẹp của trang phục trước)

B. Siêu sao nhạc nhẹ lập một kỷ lục Guinness về việc bán băng đĩa của mình.

Britney Spears đã có hai mục từ trong sách ghi các kỷ lục Guinness của thế giới. Cô ấy giữ kỷ lục về việc bán băng đĩa chạy nhất khi hãy còn là một nghệ sĩ ở tuổi vị thành niên và là nữ nghệ sĩ bán đĩa *Oops! I did It Again* nhanh nhất với kỷ lục là 1.3 triệu đĩa chỉ trong tuần lễ đầu tiên. Các người hâm mộ của cô đã hối thúc cô cho ra một album về chương trình nhạc sống với những bản nhạc riêng của cô được trình diễn vừa qua.

- A C. Lại lắp Spears, album)
 B 4. SPORTS (basketball, basketball player, game)
 1. ECONOMY (lũng)

Tin đồn mới nhất cho rằng Micheal Jordan đang trở lại chơi bóng rổ. Tay chơi bóng rổ cừ khôi nhất thế giới này đã rời sân đấu cách đây 8 tháng. Ngày hôm qua anh ấy đã từ chối tiết lộ kế hoạch của mình cho giới phóng viên báo chí. Liệu anh ấy có rời sân lần nữa không?

D. Kiểm tìm cơ hội trong kinh doanh.

Một cuộc họp thảo luận về đầu tư quốc tế vừa diễn ra tại khách sạn New World ngày hôm qua. Những khách mời đã thảo luận về các cơ hội đầu tư về kinh tế khắp nơi ở châu Á

E. Hãy mang nó theo cùng bạn.

Bạn thường xuyên đi đây đi đó và bạn muốn đem theo tất cả tài liệu của bạn. Thay vì phải mang theo máy tính xách tay, bạn chỉ cần sử dụng chiếc điện thoại thông minh của chúng tôi (167g). Một khi những tư liệu của bạn ở trong chiếc điện thoại, bạn có thể xem nó, gửi bằng đường thư điện tử cho người khác và chuyển nó qua một máy khác

c) Match the above pieces of news with five of these themes:

Đáp án:

- C 6. FASHION (fashion, models, clothes)
 D 3. MUSIC (Britney investment, investors, economies)
 E 7. ADVERTISEMENT (pronoun you, imperative structure, auxiliary can)

d) Read the pieces of news again and answer the questions:

Đáp án:

1. Because they want to draw the audience's attention to the new fashions, not the models' beauty.
2. 1.3 million copies.
3. Eighteen months ago.
4. They met yesterday to discuss investment opportunities in the economies all around Asia.
5. The advantages of the smart phone are that it can help its users view documents, send these documents via e-mail, and transfer these documents to another device.

e) Fill in the blanks with the words from the extracts

Đáp án:

- | | | | |
|--------------|-----------------|------------|---------------------------|
| A 1. fashion | B 3. record | C 7. rumor | D 9. investment/investors |
| 2. model | 4. teenage | 8. red-hot | 10. economies |
| | 5. best-selling | | |
| | 6. female | | |

E 11. constantly

12. document(s)

II. LISTENING

* Ghi chú:

- Talk show: trong chương trình này, người được mời đến phỏng vấn (thường là một nhân vật nổi tiếng, ví dụ ca sĩ, nhạc sĩ, vận động viên...) trả lời các câu hỏi về công việc, cuộc sống.. của mình

- Game show: Người đến với chương trình này tham gia trò chơi hoặc trả lời một số câu hỏi. Người thắng cuộc sẽ nhận giải thưởng. Chương trình Chiếc Nô Ki Diệu trên VTV3 là một loại "game show"

- Quiz show: Người tham gia chương trình này phải trả lời các câu hỏi kiểm tra kiến thức theo chủ đề. Người thắng cuộc sẽ nhận giải thưởng. Chương trình **Hành Trình Văn Hóa** là một "quiz show"

a) You are going to hear part of a TV talk show. Jenny and Mike, two American teenagers, are going to tell us what they think about TV programs. Listen and check the TV programs mentioned in the show.

Đáp án:

a.

Movies	✓		
Fashion		Music	✓
Cartoon	✓	Quiz shows	✓
Police shows	✓	Environment	
Educational programs	✓	Game shows	✓
Sports		Comedies	
Documentaries	✓	News reports	✓
Commercials			

Đáp án:

b. Listen again and check the TV programs each of the guests likes

	Jenny	Mike
Movies	✓	✓
Police shows		
Sports		✓
Commercials	✓	
Music	✓	✓
Quiz shows		✓
Game shows		✓
News reports	✓	✓

2. Report what Jenny and Mike think about the TV programs:

Đáp án gợi ý:

Jenny and Mike are two teens from a local high school. Both of them think that movies on TV are generally good. They also like music shows and news reports. Neither of them likes police shows.

Jenny likes commercials, but Mike doesn't. He spends a lot of time watching sports, quiz shows, and game shows. Jenny thinks most of them are a waste of time.

III. SPEAKING

Likes and Dislikes About Mass Media

a) Make questions and answers about the mass media:

Đáp án gợi ý:

1) Thanh: What's your opinion about our local newspaper?

Quy: It's not very good. I don't like reading it.

Thanh: Me, too.

2) Thư: What do you think about the movies on TV?

Thao: Some of them are very good and they have an educational purpose.

Thư: But there are some violent films. They are not good for children.

3) Hương: How do you feel about our radio programs?

Hồng: Some are very informative and up-to-date.

Hương: I agree with you but I still prefer watching TV. It's much more interesting to hear and see at the same time.

b) Work in groups to ask and answer the questions:

1) What kind of mass media do you often watch, listen to, or read?

2) What do you like or dislike about them?

*** Đáp án gợi ý:**

1.

Thu : What kind of mass media do you often watch, listen to, or read, Đang?

Đang: TV of course.

Thu: Why?

Đang: There are a lot of channels and most of the programs are very informative and entertaining.

Nguyen: I like watching TV too but I still find that there is too much violence on TV nowadays. So, besides TV, I also enjoy reading.

Đang: What do you like to read?

Nguyen: Every day I read newspapers to be well-informed about the events in our country and around the world. I like reading newspapers because I can do it at any time and anywhere. Moreover, newspapers can give me more details about things I am interested in.

Dang: But what I dislike about reading newspapers is that some of the information is not very reliable. It is sometimes subjective so it can bewilder the readers

Thu: But we all have to agree that newspapers are good means of communication. It is a business which makes a big profit nowadays.

***2.** We listen to the radio every day. Its music programs are fantastic because there are various programs for people of different ages and tastes. We also like the news reported in English. But we don't like lottery programs. They're boring.

C) Report to the whole class on a movie, a TV program, a story or a book you have recently watched or read:

*** Đáp án gợi ý**

1) Among the TV programs on TV, I like "Vượt Lên Chính Mình" on HTV best. I never miss an episode of this program because I want to understand how poor people overcome their problems in life. From what I see, I realize that I am much happier than those introduced in the shows. So now I try to appreciate what I have in life, and I'm willing to help out disadvantaged people in our society. In my opinion, this is a very good program and everybody should spend time watching it.

2) The movie I have just watched is King Kong. It received three Academy Awards in 2006: Achievement in Sound Editing, Achievement in Sound Mixing and Achievement in Visual Effects. It is about a group of people surviving a shipwreck and landing on an island where they met a giant ape. I hated the big monster at first, but then I liked it and even cried when it was shot dead.

V. WRITING

Pre-writing

a. Read the following paragraph about the advantages of television. List four advantages mentioned in the paragraph:

Đáp án:

- 1.** Educational (children learn from TV programs)
- 2.** Informative (people know more about the world)
- 3.** Entertaining, relaxing (people relax)
- 4.** Good for old people (old people do not feel lonely)

b. Read the following paragraph about the disadvantages of television. Fill in the blank with one of the following words or phrases in the box:

Đáp án gợi ý:

- 1.** First of all/ Firstly
- 2.** In addition/ Moreover/ Furthermore
- 3.** As a result/ Therefore
- 4.** Finally/ At last
- 5.** On the whole.

While-writing

Write a paragraph about the advantages or disadvantages of computers.

Đáp án gợi ý:

Advantages	Disadvantages
- Tool to get information (get access to the Internet to get information) - Entertainment (listen to music, watch movies, play games...) - Communication (send and receive emails) - Business (on-line shopping, management, teleconferencing)	- Lack of direct contact - Lack of physical exercise - Neglect of work or study - Personal information leakage - Poor eyesight

Post-writing

Đáp án gợi ý:

1) The computer is a wonderful machine. It has had a great effect on science, industry, business, medicine, and education and has touched the lives of everyone, even people in distant villages. However the computer has its advantages and disadvantages.

One of the most obvious advantages of using computers is that computers can do all kinds of work. People can work, study, do business, entertain or even go shopping on computers. This can help save money, time and energy too. Computers are also very important for those who are alone all day. With a computer, they can send or receive email to and from all places in the world, chat with friends or ask for help when they have problems.

On the other hand, using computers can have certain disadvantages. While it is good to have such cheap and convenient entertainment, it may also mean the end of conversations with people living around. Once you start to surf the web or play games it becomes a habit that is difficult to break. This is quite dangerous with students who do not save time for their study.

What is more, spending too much time on computers can cause physical problems. It can affect your eyesight and you can gain weight from lack of exercise.

All things considered, I think that the good points far outweigh the bad and I think people will enjoy their life with a computer as long as they use it in moderation.

2) The computer now is very popular in our daily life thanks to its advantages. First of all, it's a tool to get information from the Internet. People can read newspapers on-line and surf the web to find the information they want. In addition, when people are tired, they can put a CD or VCD into their computer and enjoy the music or movie they like. The computer is also a very convenient and quick means of communication, as it can help send and receive

e-mails instantly. Finally, computer is an indispensable tool to help people in business. Managers can keep records of their employees' information and retrieve it easily and quickly. Businessmen can introduce and sell their products on-line without having to open showroom or store. On the whole, many people now say that they can't imagine what their life would be like without the computer.

3) Despite its many advantages, the computer now is blamed for the inconveniences it causes to people. Firstly, people are getting more and more isolated as they lack direct daily contact with other human beings. They send e-mails instead of meeting friends or relatives. They stay at home ordering goods on-line instead of going to the market to buy things. As a result, the communicative skills are becoming worse and their care for other people may be far off soon. In addition, computer addicts are usually said to be physically weak. They spend time playing games on-line or browsing the web instead of playing sports or taking part in outdoor activities. In general, computer users need to learn to use the computer to become its masters, not its slaves, so that they can get the most use of the advantages it brings to them.

VI. LANGUAGE FOCUS

Word study

Learning Associated Words Together.

a. Put the following words into the bubble network:

Đáp án:

- | | | |
|--------------|---------------------|----------------|
| 1. computer | 3. electronic media | |
| 2. billboard | 4. newspaper | 5. print media |

b. Fill in the blanks of the following sentences with the words from the bubble network:

Đáp án:

- | | | |
|--------------|---------------------|-----------------|
| 1. billboard | 3. print media | |
| 2. Junk mail | 4. electronic media | 5. direct media |

Grammar

Reporting Agreements, Apologies, Promises, Suggestions ect..

Theo nguyên tắc chung khi chuyển đổi một câu từ lời nói trực tiếp sang lời nói gián tiếp người ta phải chú ý đến các thay đổi sau đây:

* Thay đổi về thì

Thì của động từ trong câu gián tiếp thay đổi theo nguyên tắc lùi về quá khứ

Tenses in direct speech	Tenses in indirect speech
Simple present	Simple past
Present continuous	Past continuous
Present perfect	Past perfect

Present perfect continuous	Past perfect continuous
Simple Past	Past Perfect
Past Continuous	Past perfect continuous
Past perfect continuous	Past perfect continuous
Simple future	Future in the past
Future continuous	Future continuous in the past

Ví dụ:

- a) - He said, "I want to become a teacher "
- He said that he wanted to become a teacher
- b) - He said, "I am learning English"
- He said that he was learning English.
- c) - He said, "I have been to Saigon"
- He said that he had been to Saigon
- d) - He said, "I have been watching TV"
- He said that he had been watching TV
- e) - He said, "I sent her a letter "
- He said that he had sent her a letter
- f) - He said, "At 5 p.m I was cooking"
- He said that at 5p.m he had been cooking
- g) - He said, "I had finished work by 8 o'clock"
- He said that he had finished work by 8'clock.
- h) - He said, "I had been waiting for an hour by 8 o'clock"
- He said that he had been waiting for an hour by 8 o'clock
- i) - He said, "I will do it"
- He said that he would do it
- k) - He said, "I will be waiting at 3 o'clock in the afternoon"
- He said that he would be waiting at 3 o'clock in the afternoon

* **Thay đổi về đại từ và tính từ sở hữu**

- He said, "I will do it by *myself* "
- He said that *he* would do it by *himself*
- He said to her, "I will help *you* do it"
- He told her that *he* would help *her* do it

* **Thay đổi về tính từ chỉ định và trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn và thời gian**

Direct speech	Indirect speech
this, these	that, those
here, now, ago	there, then, before
today, tonight	that day, that night

tomorrow	the next/following day/ the day after
yesterday	the previous day /the day before
last night	the previous night /the night before
next week	the following week /the week after
the day before yesterday	two days before
the day after tomorrow	two days after

Để giới thiệu lời nói trực tiếp sang lời nói gián tiếp người ta thường sử dụng các động từ

*** Câu mệnh lệnh:** to tell, to ask, to order

He told me not to come late.

She asked me to show her the way to his house.

The teacher ordered the students to keep silent.

*** Câu trần thuật:** to say, to tell

He said that he wanted to meet my mother.

She told me that she had just come there.

***Câu hỏi:** to ask, to want to know, to wonder

He asked me why I was always late.

She wanted to know when the result would be announced.

I wondered when he would come.

Ngoài trừ những động từ nêu trên một số động từ khác được sử dụng để giới thiệu lời nói trực tiếp và gián tiếp trong những tình huống sau đây:

- advise:

"You shouldn't go." → I advised him not to go.

"You'd better go over this report " → He advised her to go over that report.

"If I were you, I wouldn't come here" → She advised me not to come there

- agree:

"OK, I'll give you a lift." → He agreed to give me a lift.

- apologize:

"I am sorry for being late." → She apologized for being late

- congratulate:

"Fabulous, you got the job" → I congratulated her on getting the job.

- deny:

"No, I didn't break your pen" → She denied breaking my pen.

- invite:

"Would you like to go out for dinner tonight?" → He invited me to go out for dinner that night.

- offer:

“Shall I carry your case?” → He offered to carry my case.

promise:

“I won’t do it again” → He promised not to do it again.

“I will surely be home by 9.” → She promised to be home by 9.

remind:

“Don’t forget to send him a note” → She reminded me to send him a note.

suggest:

“How about eating out?” → He suggested eating out.

“Let’s go fishing this weekend” → He suggested going fishing that weekend

(He suggested that they should go fishing/He suggested that they go fishing)

Complete the sentences to report what someone said:

áp án:

Reporters advised the famous singer to set up a fan club in that city.

She apologized to her fans for not releasing a live album of the tour.

They invited me to go to the musical with them that night.

She refused to give us/them the name of her latest album at that time.

She agreed to lend me that CD the following day.

He promised to stage his live show the following year/ next year.

He suggested that they go to the movies that night.

or: He suggested going to the movies that night.

She promised to help me with the housework before the game show on TV.

Read the following text and say what you think the speaker actually said.

áp án:

Mai said: ‘Let’s go to Dam Sen Park.’

Nam said: ‘You have to bring your lunches to the picnic.’

Lan said: ‘Why don’t we go to a restaurant?’

Nam answered: ‘No, that’s not a good idea. Eating in a restaurant is expensive.’

Lan said: ‘I’ll pay for the meal in a restaurant.’

Everyone said: ‘You should save your money.’

BÀI TẬP CÙNG CỐ

UNIT 7

A. PHONETICS

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced different from that of the others in the same line.

1	A. media	B. event	C. research	D. record
2	A. fashion	B. exam	C. laptop	D. mankind
3	A. ways	B. weeks	C. kinds	D. lines
4	A. discussion	B. investor	C. designer	D. superstar
5	A. teenage	B. message	C. passage	D. leakage

II. Choose the word whose stress pattern is different from the rest each group.

6	A. document	B. computer	C. basketball	D. internet
7	A. information	B. entertainment	C. education	D. president
8	A. stressful	B. boring	C. pretty	D. direct
9	A. advantage	B. mystery	C. performance	D. pagoda
10	A. magazine	B. millionaire	C. policy	D. teenager

B. GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY.

These are incomplete sentences. Circle A or B, C, D as your best choice to complete each sentence or exchange.

11. Newspapers are one of the main _____ for spreading news and events throughout the world.
A. ways B. sources C. places D. methods
12. Of the followings, _____ is NOT a type of mass media.
A. the internet B. films C. magazines D. dictionaries
13. What program is _____ TV at 8.30 tonight?
A. on B. in C. at D. no preposition
14. Most children are interested in _____.
A. documentary films B. cartoons C. news D. weather forecasts
15. How many channels are there in our _____ TV?
A. nation B. national C. nationalize D. nationally
16. This singer was supported in _____ a live album of her last live show.
A. releasing B. producing C. publishing D. establishing
17. Movies are not only for entertainment but also for _____ purposes.
A. educational B. educated C. educating D. education

18. The only feature which makes television, a popular type of mass media, different from radio is that _____
A. television provides information and entertainment
B. radio provides information and entertainment through mouths
C. TV viewers can get information through ears and eyes.
D. TV provides update information
19. _____ we use the internet, we can give and get information very quickly.
A. If B. While C. When D. Because
20. _____ is an example of print media.
A. Television B. Radio C. Internet D. A book
21. Radio and television _____ information and entertainment to the public.
A. provide B. deliver C. supply D. receive
22. "From what type of media do you get information aurally and visually?" "____"
A. Newspapers B. Radio C. Television D. Books
23. A _____ is a film or television programme which gives facts about something.
A. comedy B. drama C. programme D. documentary
24. Television can make things _____ because it presents information in an effective way.
A. reasonable B. memorable C. comfortable D. boring
25. She apologized _____ her fans for not attending the meeting.
A. for B. to C. with D. on

C. READING.

Read the following passage carefully and choose the best answer for each question:

TV or NO TV

Today there is a television set in almost every house. In some countries, you can choose between as many as forty different channels: some show only a single type of program- news, sports, music, theater or movies ;most show the different kinds of programs, giving the viewer a wide range of entertainment to choose from. In one country a recent survey showed that the average person spent three and half hours a day watching television. Housewives were the biggest groups of viewer's. They spent an average of five hours a day watching TV while their husbands were out at work.

For families with children a major problem is getting the children away from the television to do their homework. What impact then does television have on people's lives?

To find out, an unusual experiment was carried out recently. A group of forty four families were asked to disconnect their television sets for one month. The families were studied to see how their lives were affected by not being able to watch TV during this period.

Four of the families found that family life simply could not continue without TV, and they withdrew from the experiment. They said they could find no other way to spend their free time. Among those who successfully kept away from television, several interesting observations were reported.

Some parents were glad to end the daily struggle among family members to decide what programme to watch. In some families, people went to bed earlier. Family members found other things to do, such as reading or playing volleyball. Many families found that they had more time to talk and play among themselves without television. Dinner times were more relaxed without the pressure of TV. Children's eyesight improved in several cases.

On the other hand, some families said they greatly missed their favourite programmes. A father in one family without TV started gambling, and another began to drink heavily. Some children found they had nothing to talk about at school; they no longer could talk about their favourite comedians, singers, or actors. Several mothers found they had less to talk about with their young children.

At the end of the experiment, most of the families wanted to have a television back in their homes. But they said that in the future they would watch only certain programmes, and not allow their lives to be governed by television.

26. The passage shows that

- a. fewer people are watching television nowadays.
- b. there are forty different channels for viewers to choose now.
- c. the quality of life has improved because of television.
- d. women prefer watching TV to men.

27. According to one survey mentioned in the passage

- a. women spent most of their time watching TV.
- b. men didn't have time to watch TV.
- c. an average person spent 5 hours a day watching TV.
- d. most TV viewers were women who didn't have to go to work.

28. Which of the following is NOT the disadvantage of watching TV?

- a. Children don't have enough time to do their homework.
- b. Children may have poor eyesight.
- c. Sometimes it may be a waste of time.
- d. It gives viewers a wide range of entertainment to choose from.

29. The experiment described in the passage .

- a. was a failure

10. The word "they" (line 17) refers to _____.
- a.forty four families. b.the families.
c.four of the familie s. d.television sets.

1) In these sentences, each one has four underlined words or phrases marked A, B, C, and D. Choose the one word or phrase that must be changed in order for the sentence to be correct by circling letter A or B, C, D.

- C** **D**

- | A | B | C | D |
|---|---|---|---|
|---|---|---|---|

- A** **B** **C**

D

- | A | B | C | D |
|---|---|---|---|
|---|---|---|---|

- | A | B | C | D |
|---|---|---|---|
|---|---|---|---|

D. Despite his busy, he never misses the World News on TV.

- D. He has taken his computing lessons 3 years ago.**

38. The last time I went to the movie was 4 years ago.
- A. I have gone to the movie for 4 years,
 - B. It's four years since I haven't gone to the movie.
 - C. I haven't gone to the movie for 4 years.
 - D. It was 4 years since I last went to the movie .
39. I have never enjoyed such a wonderful book.
- A. This is the first time I have enjoyed so a wonderful book.
 - B. I have never enjoyed a more wonderful book than this one.
 - C. This is the most wonderful book I read.
 - D. This book is more wonderful than all I read .
40. This magazine attracts a lot of readers even though its price is high.
- A. In spite the price is high, this magazine attracts a lot of readers..
 - B. This magazine attracts a lot of readers because the price is high.
 - C. In spite of its high price, this magazine attracts a lot of readers.
 - D. Because of the high price, this magazine attracts a lot of readers.
41. I have ninety nine pages to type by Friday so I can't go with you.
- A. If I don't have ninety nine pages to type by Friday, I will go with you
 - B. Because of ninety nine pages, I can't go with you.
 - C. Ninety nine pages to type by Friday prevents me going with you..
 - D. Because of having ninety nine pages to type by Friday I can't g
with you.
42. We are now becoming more informative due to using the internet.
- A. Because we are informative we use the internet.
 - B. Use the internet, we are more informative.
 - C. The internet is informative, we use it.
 - D. Thanks to the using of the internet, we are becoming more informative.
43. The view from the top of the mountain is wonderful, so she tries to climb i
often.
- A. She often climbs the mountain because of its wonderful view.
 - B. In spite of the wonderful view, she climbs the mountain so often..
 - C. She climbs the wonderful mountain often because of its view.
 - D. In spite of the view, she climbs the wonderful mountain.

DÁP ÁN

Unit 7

A. PHONETICS

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in the same line.

1 D record 2 B.example 3 B.weeks 4 C.designer 5 A. teenage

II. Choose the word whose stress pattern is different from the rest in each group.

3 B. computer 7 D. technology 8 D.direct 9 B. television 10 A. magazine

B. GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY.

These are incomplete sentences. Circle A, B, C or D as your best choice to complete each sentence or exchange.

- 11 B. sources 12 D. dictionaries 13 A. on 14 B. cartoons
15 B. national 16 A. releasing 17 A. educational
18 C. TV viewers can get information through ears and eyes.
19 C. When 20 D.Books 21 B. deliver 22 C.television
23 D. documentary 24 B. memorable 25 B. to

C. READING.

Read the following passage carefully and choose the best answer for each question.

26. C. the quality of life has improved because of television
27. D. most TV viewers were women who didn't have to go to work
28. D. It gives viewers a wide range of entertainment to choose from
29. D. was to find out the impact of TV on people's lives
30. C. four of the families

D. WRITING

a) In these sentences, each one has four underlined words or phrases marked A, B, C, and D. Choose the one word or phrase that must be changed in order for the sentence to be correct by circling letter A or B, C, D.

31. C. makes → make
32. D like → likes,
33. B which → who
34. D can newspapers print → newspapers can print
35. B magazine → magazines

b) Make meaningful sentences with the words given

- 36 C. In spite of being busy, he never misses the World News on TV

- 37 A. He has been taking computing lessons for 3 years
 38 C. I haven't gone to the movie for 4 years
 39.B. I have never enjoyed a more wonderful book than this one
 40.C. In spite of its high price, this magazine attracts a lot of readers
 41 D. Because of having ninety nine pages to type by Friday I can't go with you
 42 D. Thanks to the using of the internet, we are becoming more informative.
 43 A. She often climbs the mountain because of its wonderful view.

Unit 8

LIFE IN THE COMMUNITY

I. READING

Before you read

Look at the pictures of some kinds of markets in Vietnam. Match each type of market with the appropriate picture

Đáp án: 1. a 2.d 3.b 4.c

Reading text

5) Reading text

Bài dịch gợi ý: Chợ ở Việt Nam

- A. Chợ là một nơi để mua bán, nhưng nhiều chợ không phải chỉ là nơi mua và bán. Chợ phản ánh được lối sống của cộng đồng. Ở Việt Nam một cái chợ truyền thống là một nơi tụ họp mọi người đủ mọi lứa tuổi và mọi tầng lớp trong xã hội. Đó là một trải nghiệm mới và thú vị cho trẻ con, một sự nếm trải đặc biệt cho người lao động nông thôn, một nơi mua bán cho những người thợ thủ công địa phương, và là một cơ hội cho những người trẻ gặp gỡ. Người ta đi chợ không chỉ để mua và bán nhưng còn để ăn, uống, chơi các trò chơi và cũng để hòa nhập với xã hội.
- B. Có nhiều loại chợ quê khác nhau. Các chợ phiên thì được tổ chức có định kì. Người bán mang những nông sản và các thứ cần thiết chẳng hạn như trái cây, rau cải, dầu ăn, và muối đến chợ bốn hoặc năm lần trong một tháng. Ở cao nguyên, người ta mặc những trang phục đẹp nhất và trải qua cả ngày dài ở chợ. Họ mua mọi thứ, thổi sáo, khiêu vũ hoặc hát. Đây cũng là lúc để nam, nữ gặp gỡ, kết bạn hoặc tìm người yêu. Đó là lý do tại sao có một loại tụ họp mang tên "chợ tình". Một vài chợ quê ở vùng đồng bằng sông Cửu Long họp chợ trên thuyền. Hầu hết các loại hàng hóa được bày bán trên chợ nổi và chuyện mua bán ấy diễn ra suốt ngày. Thời khắc thú vị nhất là vào sáng sớm khi thuyền bè đến chất đầy nông sản và các sản phẩm của thợ thủ công.

Ngày nay, người ta có thể mua tất cả các loại nông sản và sản phẩm công nghiệp ở các chợ trong những thành phố nhỏ và tại siêu thị ở các thành phố lớn. Liệu rằng siêu thị có thể thay thế chợ truyền thống ẩm cúng đã là một phần trong cuộc sống của người dân Việt nhiều thế kỷ qua? Mặc dầu các siêu thị phát triển rất nhanh tại hầu hết các đô thị nhiều người vẫn tin rằng chợ sẽ tiếp tục tồn tại như một phần của văn hoá mở rộng.

1. Match each heading with a corresponding paragraph:

Đáp án:

Paragraph A – 3. Functions of Markets

Paragraph B – 1. Market Diversity

Paragraph C – 2. Today's Markets

2) Choose the answer that corresponds to the meaning of each underlined word or phrase:

Đáp án:

1. B 2. C 3. B 4. A 5. B 6. B 7. A 8. C

3. The following statements can be true or false. Check the appropriate boxes:

Đáp án:

1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. T 6. F

2. Fairs were held periodically.

4. People sell a variety of goods in a floating market (farm produce, craftsmen's products, etc.).

6. Traditional markets are believed to continue to exist.

1) In groups of four, go to a market or supermarket in your neighbourhood to observe people's activities, take notes, and give a report to the class (Optional)

Đáp án gợi ý:

- a trading place

- people come to sell, buy, eat, drink, and come for a look

- things to sell: agricultural products: food, fruit, vegetable, flowers, rice, eggs
craftsmen's products industrial products: cloth, clothes, wool, mats, shoes, hats, handbags.

all kinds of necessities....

- opening time: 5 a.m for agricultural products: food, fruit, vegetable, flowers, rice, eggs

craftsmen's products

6.30 am for other things; food stalls

- closing time: 7.p.m goods upstairs

9. p.m goods ground floor

- local people, visitors.

- features: crowded all day.

II. LISTENING

- a) What kind of market do you often go to? Optional
b) Listen and write the words you hear in the appropriate column according to the pronunciation of their ed-ending sounds.

Đáp án:

/t/	/d/	/Id/
looked	changed	deserted
used to	moved	floated
dressed	amazed	
impressed	showed	
	socialized	
	used	
	seemed	

- C. Listen to Lien and Mrs. Brown, Lien's former English teacher, talking about the changes in Lien's hometown. The following statements can be true or false. Check the appropriate boxes then correct the false statements:

Đáp án:

1. F 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. F 6. F

- d. Listen again and give short answers to the following questions.

Đáp án:

1. Ten years ago.
2. Because there are many modern stores now.
3. Because she likes looking at Vietnamese women in their ao ba ba's.
4. To the Mekong Delta.
5. She feels very excited.

- e) In pairs, talk about the changes in your neighbourhood or town. Are the houses and the roads better or worse than before?

Đáp án gợi ý:

There have been a lot of changes in my neighbourhood during the last ten years. The small old houses have been pulled down and more new houses have been built. The streets have been widened and resurfaced. Big old trees along the streets have been cut down and young trees have been planted. The large area of grass land in front of the high school has turned into a nice park. It's a popular place for young people to gather to play games, sing and dance. The small dirty market has been replaced by a larger, nicer and cleaner market.

III. SPEAKING

Giving Opinions about Plans.

- a) Some people in Minh's neighbourhood are giving their opinions on the town's plan of building a supermarket in the place of a small market. Discuss and

write down the advantages and disadvantages that the plan may bring to the people in the town and on nearby farms:

Đáp án gợi ý:

Advantages	Disadvantages
- Clean place for shopping - Variety of products to buy - Goods sold at reasonable prices with no bargaining - More jobs for young people - Farmers /workers produce more to meet the increase in consumption - Safe place to do the shopping	- No place for local farmers to sell their produce - Lack of friendly atmosphere. - Low-income vendors' loss of work - Customers cannot control their shopping list.

b) In pairs or in groups of four, use the useful expressions above to talk about the effects of building a supermarket to replace a small traditional market in your neighbourhood.

Đáp án gợi ý:

Lan: Guess what! I hear they are going to build a supermarket in the corner of Nguyen Sieu and Cao Ba Quat streets.

Tien: A supermarket! Wow! I think it's a nice plan but I don't think it will be successful.

Hoa: Why not?

Tien: Well, it's quite far from the residential area! I don't think people would like travelling a long distance to go shopping.

Lan: Yeah, but wouldn't it be more convenient? They can do the shopping in a clean and safe place. Moreover, there is much choice.

Hoa: The life of the local farmers is the only thing that I'm worried about.

Tien: Hmm. I know what you mean. This would make it harder for them to sell their products.

Lan: Oh, wait. But they can use more effective methods to increase production and sell their products to the supermarket

Hoa: That's a good idea!

c) Tell your partner(s) whether you like shopping in a small traditional market or in a large modern supermarket. Give reasons for your preference.

Đáp án gợi ý:

I prefer shopping in a large modern supermarket to shopping in a small traditional market for a number of reasons. First of all, I can do my shopping in a clean, safe and comfortable place. I don't have to worry about the rain or the intense heat during summer days. I can also buy things at a fixed price and don't have to bargain with sellers. There is more choice at the supermarket so I

am free to choose things that I need or the things I like. The most important thing is that I can take my time and choose my own shopping instead of buying something I don't like just because the sellers have convinced me!

V. WRITING

Giving Directions

- a) Read Jack's letter, the map, and the useful expressions below:
- b) Write a letter to a new friend of yours to invite him/her to your home for the weekend. Give him/her directions so that he/she can get to your house easily.

Đáp án gợi ý:

1)

Dear Lan,

I'm very pleased to hear that you are going to spend this weekend at my home town. My parents are excited to see you so I hope you can feel at home staying at my house. I'm writing this letter to tell you how to get to my house from the bus station.

When you get out of the bus station, turn left. Keep going to the end of Le Hong Phong street and then turn left into Tran Hung Dao Street. Go straight ahead until you reach the crossroads of Tran Hung Dao and Tran Binh Trong. Turn right on Tran Binh Trong street. Walk past the college on the right. My house is the third one after the college, opposite a coffee shop. You can't miss it.

I have enclosed a map so that you can follow my directions easily.

Looking forward to seeing you soon.

Love,

2) Dear Jim,

I'm glad to know that you have come to Vietnam for a short visit. It would be great if you could come over for dinner with my family this old friends of mine are also joining us, and I would like to introduce you to them.

Well, since you haven't been to my house before, you can follow the directions on the map enclosed. From your hotel opposite Tao Dan park, turn left and go along Cach Mang Thang tam Street, past Dien Bien Phu street. When you reach Dan Chu Traffic Circle, turn left into Ba Thang Hai street. Keep going till you see Hoa Binh Theater on your right. Go past Hoa Binh theater and turn right into Su Van Hanh street. Go about 200 meters, and you will see my house on your left, next to the post office.

Look forward to seeing you on the weekend.

Son

7. LANGUAGE FOCUS

Word study

Prepositions of Directions

Giới từ là từ dùng để chỉ mối quan hệ giữa danh từ hoặc đại danh từ với một từ khác trong câu.

Giới từ chỉ nơi chốn thường chỉ mối quan hệ giữa nơi chốn và đối tượng lược nói đến.

Việc sử dụng giới từ thường không theo quy luật rõ rệt mà chủ yếu dựa vào cách dùng trong thực tế. Để sử dụng tốt giới từ, người học cần nắm một vài quy luật chủ yếu, quan sát qua việc sử dụng hằng ngày của người bản xứ và thông qua sách vở.

Những giới từ chỉ nơi chốn thường gặp là:

Preposition	Use	Examples
above	higher than sth.	The picture hangs above my bed.
across	from one side to the other side	You mustn't go across this road here. There isn't a bridge across the river.
after	one follows the other	The cat ran after the dog. After you.
against	directed towards sth.	The bird flew against the window.
along	in a line; from one point to another	They're walking along the beach.
among	in a group	I like being among people.
around	in a circular way	We're sitting around the campfire.
behind	at the back of	Our house is behind the supermarket.
below	lower than sth.	Death Valley is 86 metres below sea level.
beside	next to	Our house is beside the supermarket.
between	sth./sb. is on each side	Our house is between the supermarket and the school.
by	near	He lives in the house by the river.
close to	near	Our house is close to the supermarket.
down	from high to low	He came down the hill.
from	the place where it starts	Do you come from Tokyo?
in front of	the part that is in the direction it faces	Our house is in front of the supermarket.
inside	opposite of outside	You shouldn't stay inside the castle.
into	entering sth.	You shouldn't go into the castle.

near	close to	Our house is near the supermarket.
next to	beside	Our house is next to the supermarket.
off	away from sth.	The cat jumped off the roof.
onto	moving to a place	The cat jumped onto the roof.
opposite	on the other side	Our house is opposite the supermarket
out of	leaving sth.	The cat jumped out of the window.
outside	opposite of inside	Can you wait outside ?
over	above sth./sb.	The cat jumped over the wall.
past	going near sth./sb.	Go past the post office.
round	in a circle	We're sitting round the campfire.
through	going from one point to the other point	You shouldn't walk through the forest.
to	towards sth./sb.	I like going to Australia. Can you come to me? I've never been to Africa.
towards	in the direction of sth.	They walk towards the castle.
under	below sth.	The cat is under the table.
up	from low to high	He went up the hill.

*** Ghi chú:**

Có một vài điểm khác biệt về cách sử dụng những giới từ chỉ nơi chốn sau đây

1) Jean fell **on** (to) the floor. (Completion of an Action)

Jean is **on** the floor. (Position of Subject)

2) Susumu dived in(t o) the water. (Completion of an Action)

Susumu is **in** the water. (Position of Subject)

3) Trong một số trường hợp ON và ONTO có thể thay thế cho nhau.

Đối với những động từ sau đây một vài người chỉ sử dụng "on". Những người khác thì dùng cả "on " và " onto"

- + The plane landed **on** the runway. (not onto the runway)
- + Sam hung the decoration **on** the Christmas tree. (not onto the tree)
- + He placed the package **on** the table. (not onto the table)
- + Joanna spilled her Coke **on** the rug. (not onto the rug)
- + Samir moved the chair **on**(to) the deck.
- + The crane lowered the roof **on**(to) the house.
- + The baby threw the pot **on**(to) the floor.

4) Với những động từ chỉ sự chuyển động, "in" và "into" có thể sử dụng thay thế cho nhau ngoại trừ khi giới từ ấy được đặt cuối câu hoặc đứng ngay trước trạng

Chỉ thời gian, thể cách, hoặc chỉ sự thường xuyên. Trong trường hợp này người ta chỉ sử dụng "in" hoặc "inside"

- + The patient went **into** the doctor's office.
- + The patient went **in**. (not into)
- + Our new neighbors moved **into** the house next door yesterday. ('to take up residence in a new home')
- + Our new neighbors moved **in** yesterday. (Trong câu này từ cuối cùng là trạng từ thời gian **yesterday** bởi thế túc từ của giới từ "in" có thể lược đi)

Và dĩ nhiên ở dạng câu hỏi để lấy thông tin "**into**" cũng có thể đứng ở cuối câu
Now what kind of trouble has she gotten herself **into**?

hực hành:

Complete the exchanges below with the words or phrases from the box:

áp án:

- | | | |
|----------|--------------|----------------|
| 1. next | 2. as far as | 3. in front of |
| 4. above | 5. to | 6. across |

Grammar

Conditional sentences : Type 1

Câu điều kiện thường có hai phần, một phần nêu lên điều kiện – mệnh đề chỉ điều kiện (thường bắt đầu với if) và phần kia nêu lên kết quả – mệnh đề chỉ kết quả. Hai mệnh đề trong câu điều kiện có thể đảo vị trí cho nhau.

If I am sick, I will stop working.

I will stop working if I am sick.

Câu điều kiện loại 1 thường dùng để diễn tả một điều kiện có thể xảy ra trong hiện tại hoặc tương lai.

Câu điều kiện loại 1 được thành lập như sau:

If clause	Main clause
Simple present	Simple future

hực hành:

Complete the exchanges below using the appropriate form of verbs in parentheses.

áp án:

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. hurry; 'll catch/ can catch | 2. 'll go; finish |
| 3. 'll have; work | 4. has; 'll spend |
| 5. rains; will be | |

Because of, In spite of / Despite.

Mệnh đề chỉ lí do bắt đầu bằng những từ nối như **because, as, since, being, now that**

Mệnh đề bắt đầu bằng **because** thường được đặt sau mệnh đề chính để nhấn mạnh mệnh đề trạng từ chỉ lí do. Mệnh đề bắt đầu bằng **as, since, see that** và **now that** thường được đặt đầu câu để nhấn mạnh mệnh đề chính.

I didn't come because he was sick.

Since he was late, we decided to go without him

Seeing that there was no one there, he left.

Now that summer has come, the weather is hotter and hotter.

Because có thể được thay thế bằng **because of** nhưng cách sử dụng có khác nhau:

We came late for the meeting because it rained heavily.

We came late for the meeting because of the heavy rain

Sau **because** là một mệnh đề (because it rained heavily).

Sau **because of** là một danh từ, một cụm từ không chứa động từ được chia là một Ving phrase

(because of the heavy rain)

*Mệnh đề chỉ sự tương phản bắt đầu bằng những từ nối như **though /although /even though**.

Though và **although** cũng có nghĩa tương tự như **but** nhưng không được sử dụng chung trong cùng một câu. Đây là lỗi sai phổ biến người học thường mắc phải.

Though (Although) he tried hard, he was not successful.

Though (không phải là although) có thể đi sau tính từ trong trường hợp đảo ngữ

Though he is poor, he is happy.

Poor though he is, he is happy.

Though cũng có thể đặt ở cuối câu, nhất là trong đàm thoại

John looks stupid; he knows mathematics, though.

Though có thể được thay thế bằng **despite/ in spite of** nhưng cách sử dụng khác nhau:

Although it rained hard, he came on time.

He came on time despite / in spite of the hard rain.

Sau **though / although**.. là một mệnh đề (it rained hard).

Sau **in spite of /despite** là một danh từ, một cụm từ không chứa động từ được chia hay là một Ving phrase (the hard rain)

Thực hành:

b. Work with a partner, fill in the blanks with because of or in spite of /despite

Đáp án:

1. Because of 2. Despite/ In spite of 3. despite/ in spite of
4. because of 5. Because of 6. Despite/ In spite of
7. because of 8. Despite/ In spite of

c. Combine these pairs of sentences, using because of or in spite of.

Đáp án:

1. ... in spite of their lack of modern conveniences.
 2. ... because of the slippery road.
 3. ... because of the love for their beautiful age-old tradition.
 4. ... despite the townspeople's protest.
 5. ... in spite of the cold water.

BÀI TẬP CỦNG CỐ**UNIT 8****A. PHONETICS**

1. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in the same line.

A. <u>choice</u>	B. <u>chance</u>	C. <u>chef</u>	D. <u>child</u>
A. <u>meet</u>	B. <u>fit</u>	C. <u>treat</u>	D. <u>keep</u>
A. <u>brought</u>	B. <u>thought</u>	C. <u>fought</u>	D. <u>bought</u>
A. <u>trading</u>	B. <u>practice</u>	C. <u>vacuum</u>	D. <u>traffic</u>
A. <u>headline</u>	B. <u>hearing</u>	C. <u>deadline</u>	D. <u>headache</u>

2. Choose the word whose stress pattern is different from the rest in each group.

A. <u>community</u>	B. <u>supermarket</u>	C. <u>experience</u>	D. <u>necessity</u>
A. <u>traditional</u>	B. <u>industrial</u>	C. <u>automatic</u>	D. <u>electronic</u>
A. <u>discuss</u>	B. <u>express</u>	C. <u>produce</u>	D. <u>practice</u>
A. <u>diversity</u>	B. <u>development</u>	C. <u>agriculture</u>	D. <u>opinion</u>
0 A. <u>market</u>	B. <u>produce</u>	C. <u>award</u>	D. <u>highland</u>

B. GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY

- These are incomplete sentences. Circle A or B, C, D as your best choice to complete each sentence or exchange.

- Local farmers go to the _____ to sell what they have produced.
 A. market B. field C. garden D. center
- After much hard _____ the seller and the buyer reached an agreement.
 A. discussion B. bargaining C. argument D. consideration
- Don't forget to _____ before deciding to buy something in this market.
 A. bargain B. discuss C. reduce D. decrease

14. People in these villages go to the fairs to sell and buy farm animals and farm

- A. production B. products C. land D. machines

15. Things such as fruit, vegetables, oil and salt are also called _____.

- A. dairy products B. delicacy
C. necessities D. industrial products

16. Some countryside markets in the Mekong Delta are held on _____

- A. ships B. boats C. buses D. ferries

17. _____ markets in the Mekong Delta attract a lot of visitors because of their special features.

- A. Garden B. Sailing C. Modern D. Floating

18. The cozy traditional market _____ part of Vietnamese life for centuries.

- A. has been B. is C. will be D. was

19. Many people _____ whether the supermarket replace the cozy traditional markets?

- A. say B. tell C. wonder D. discuss

20. _____ the disadvantages of traditional markets, many people believe that they will still exist.

- A. Because B. Although C. Despite D. Due to

21. It will take you about fifteen minute's _____ from the airport to my house.

- A. to walk B. walking C. walk D. walked

22. I will give you some directions with the map _____

- A. included B. enclosed C. involved D. contained

23. Some people find it comfortable to walk _____ in a cool place while doing the shopping.

- A. towards B. through C. around D. over

24. Go _____ ahead and then turn left.

- A. straight B. back C. on D. around

25. We couldn't play the match _____ the thick fog

- A. despite B. because C. although D. because of

C. READING.

Read the following passage carefully and do the tasks that follow:

MARKETING

How do you decide what you are going to buy in a supermarket? Do you look in your refrigerator and kitchen cupboards and make a list of the things you need? Do you think about what you want to cook and then buy the food you need?

or each meal? Even if you do these things, marketing specialists at the supermarket make some of your buying decisions for you.

Specialists in marketing have studied how to make people buy more food in a supermarket. They work for supermarkets and do all kinds of things that you do not even notice. For example, the simple, ordinary food that everybody must buy, like bread, milk, flour, and oil, is spread all over the store. Bread might be in aisle 2 and milk in aisle 10. You have to walk by all the more interesting and more expensive items to find what you need.

The more expensive food is in packages with bright colors and pictures. This food is placed at eye level so you see it right away and want to buy it. The things you have to buy are usually located on a higher or lower shelf. However, candy and other things that children like are on lower shelves so that children can see them easily and ask their parents to buy them. This method of marketing really works. One study showed that when a supermarket moved four products from a low shelf to a shelf at eye level, it sold 78 percent more of those products.

Another study showed that for every minute a person spends in a supermarket after the first half hour, she or he will spend \$1.00. If someone stays for 40 minutes, the supermarket makes an additional \$10.00. A store usually has a comfortable temperature in the summer and winter, and it plays soft music. It is a pleasant place for people to stay and spend more money.

Supermarkets also sell some things at lower, or special, prices every week. The prices on some of these "specials" are not really cheaper than their regular prices. For example, an item that is usually \$.50 might be a special at 2/\$1.00 (that's two for one dollar). Or if something is not selling very fast at \$.69, it is put on special at 2/\$1.40. People think the product is cheaper than usual and buy it.

Some stores have red or pink lights over the meat so the meat looks redder and fresher. They put light green paper around lettuce and put apples in red plastic bags.

So be careful in the supermarket. You may go home with a bag of food you were not planning to buy. Marketing specialists, not you, decided you should buy it.

Understanding the reading

A. Comprehension Questions

Answer the questions about the reading

26. Why is basic food like bread and milk spread all over the supermarket?
27. What kind of food is usually at eye level?
28. Rice and beans are usually in uninteresting plastic bags. Why?
29. Why does a supermarket play soft music?

30. Why do some stores put apples in red plastic bags?
31. Why do some supermarkets place chocolate syrup near the ice cream?

B. Details

Circle the letter of the best answer

32. Marketing specialists study_____
- a. the ownership of supermarkets.
 - b. how to build cupboard.
 - c. methods of buying and selling products.
 - d. The price of food.
33. Food that is more expensive is_____
- a. on high shelves.
 - b. in bright colored packages.
 - c. usually on special.
 - d. near the front.
34. A "special" is _____than that item usually is.
- a. sometimes more expensive.
 - b. always cheaper.
 - c. never more expensive.
 - d. more delicious.
35. In the supermarket, children's books are probably_____
- a. usually on special
 - b. on low shelves
 - c. on high shelves
 - d. spread all over the store

C. Main idea

36. Check (✓) the main idea of the reading

- 1. The location of a product helps sell it.
- 2. Marketing specialists use all kinds of methods to sell products.
- 3. Some specials do not really have special prices.
- 4. Soft music and comfortable temperatures help sell products.

D. WRITING.

**** IN SPITE OF / BECAUSE OF**

A. Match the two halves of the sentences. The first one has been done as an example:

A

- 37) Although she is not interested in these programmes
- 38) He went to work

- 1) Although she is old
- 2) The film was a failure
- 3) None of us like watching this program
- 4) We will probably stay here
- 5) The reason people like to get most of their news on TV is
- 6) SANYO is popular worldwide
- 7) I can never be a newscaster (newsreader)
- 8) I wouldn't mind lending you some of my magazines

B

- 1) because of its violence scenes.
- 2) because I want to share information with others.
- 3) she enjoys climbing that mountain.
- 4) because of excellent advertising..
- 5) she watches them everyday.
- 6) because of its excellent pictures
- 7) in spite of the contribution of some famous actors and actresses.
- 8) in spite of the bad weather.
- 9) because I am not very good at speaking.
- 10) despite all the problems.

Example:

7 -e: Although she is not interested in these programmes, she watches them everyday

. Complete the sentences:

- 47. People enjoy shopping in the supermarket because
- 48. He keeps planting potatoes in spite of
- 49. Although Bill Gate is the richest man in the world
- 50. Floating markets attract a lot of tourists because of

Keys: Unit 8

. PHONETICS

Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in the same line.

C. chef 2 B. fit 3 C. fought 4 A. trading 5 B. hearing

1. Choose the word whose stress pattern is different from the rest in each group.

B. supermarket 7 C. automatic 8 D. practice 9 C. agriculture 10 C. award

B. GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY.

These are incomplete sentences. Circle A, B, C or D as your best choice to complete each sentence or exchange.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|------------------|------------------|----------------|
| 11 A. market | 12 B. bargaining | 13 A. bargain | 14 B. product |
| 15 C. necessities | 16 B. boats | 17 D. Floating | 18 A. has been |
| 19 C. wonder | 20 C. Despite | 21 A. to walk | 22 B. enclose |
| 23 C. around | 24 A. straight | 25 D. because of | |

C. READING.

Read the following passage carefully and do the tasks that follow:

A. Comprehension Questions

Answer the questions about the reading:

26. Food like bread and milk spread all over the supermarket so that shoppers will have to pass by many other foods.
27. More expensive food in packages with bright colors is usually at eye level.
28. Rice and beans are usually in uninteresting plastic bags because they are cheap and ordinary food.
29. A supermarket plays soft music so that the store will be a pleasant place for people to stay and spend money.
30. Some stores put apples in red plastic bags to make them look redder.
31. Some supermarkets place chocolate syrup near the ice cream to make people think about buying chocolate syrup to put on their ice cream.

B. Details

Circle the letter of the best answer

32. Marketing specialists study
 - c. methods of buying and selling products.
33. Food that is more expensive is
 - b. in brightly colored packages.
34. A "special" is _____ than that item usually is.
 - a. sometimes more expensive
35. In the supermarket, children's books are probably
 - b. on low shelves

C. Main idea

36. Check (✓) the main idea of the reading

..... 2. Marketing specialists use all kinds of methods to sell products.

D. WRITING

** IN SPITE OF / BECAUSE OF

A Match the two halves of the sentences. The first one has been done as an example

- 38)-h He went to work in spite of the bad weather.

- 39)-c Although she is old she enjoys climbing that mountain.
- 40)-g The film was a failure in spite of the contribution of some famous actors and actresses,
- 41)-a None of us like watching this program because of its violence scenes.
- 42)-k We will probably stay here despite all the problems.
- 43)-f The reason people like to get most of their news on TV is because of its excellent pictures.
- 44)-d SANYO is popular worldwide because of excellent advertising.
- 45)-I can never be a newscaster because I am not very good at speaking.
- 46)-b I wouldn't mind lending you some of my magazines because I want to share information with others.

B. Complete the sentences:

- 47) People enjoy shopping in the supermarket because they are not disturbed by the sellers
- 48) He keeps planting potatoes in spite of their falling of price
- 49) Although Bill Gate is the richest man in the world he always works hard
- 50) Floating markets attract a lot of tourists because of its special characteristics

CONSOLIDATION 2

Unit 5 - 8

LISTENING COMPREHENSION

a. Listen to the talk about the Internet and then complete the following statements.

Đáp án:

1. 33 million.
2. playing games.
3. World Wide Web.
4. talk to one another.
5. cables.

b. You will hear short conversations between two people. After each conversation, you will hear a question about it. After you hear the question, read the four possible answers and check (✓) the best one.

Đáp án:

- | | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1.D | 2.B | 3.A | 4.D | 5.A |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|

VOCABULARY

a. Choose the word or phrase from the box that could best complete each sentence or exchange.

Đáp án:

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|---------------|---------|
| 1. browse the web | 2. instructions | 3. operate | 4. gear |
| 5. thrilling | 6. excursion | 7. temporary | |
| 8. documentary | 9. commercials | 10. socialize | |

b. Choose the word or phrase that best complete each sentence or exchange.

Đáp án:

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 11. C | 12. D | 13. A | 14. D | 15. A |
| 16. B | 17. B | 18. C | 19. A | 20. D |

GRAMMAR AND STRUCTURE

a. Write the correct form of the verbs in parentheses in the following sentences or exchanges.

Đáp án:

1. I haven't been invited
2. Has it been repaired
3. was moved
4. Did they use
5. I did not use
6. I am going to fly
7. will get
8. Have they bought; has been sold

b. Complete the sentences to report what someone said

Đáp án:

9. Our teacher advised us to have a spirit of fair play in sports.
10. They invited me to go out to dinner with them.
11. The student apologized for not going to class the day before.
12. My friend promised/ offered to help me with the homework if I had trouble with it.
13. Minh suggested going camping on our next vacation.
14. Lan refused to lend me her dictionary because she needed it then.

c. Complete the exchanges with the prompts in parentheses.

Đáp án:

15. Because of the heavy rain. / Because it rained heavily.
16. Because of its low price. / Because it was cheap.
17. Because of her poor health. / Because she has poor health.
18. Because of their hospitality. / Because they are hospitable.
19. Because of his injured legs. / Because his legs were injured.
20. Because of the narrow road. / Because the road is narrow.

READING

Read the following text and do the tasks that follow.

Bài dịch gợi ý:

Điện thoại di động

Điện thoại di động được nhiều người ở Nhật ưa chuộng từ đầu thập niên 1990, nhưng mãi cho đến năm 1990 số người sử dụng điện thoại di động tăng lên rất nhanh. Kỹ nguyên điện thoại di động đã xuất hiện nhưng cùng lúc đó, nhiều vấn đề rắc rối lại nảy sinh.

Điện thoại di động thường được sử dụng trên xe buýt và tàu lửa, trong nhà hàng, và trong nhiều lãnh vực của cuộc sống. Rắc rối khi chuông điện thoại reo trong các buổi họp, hòa nhạc, đám cưới, và ngay cả đám tang. Hơn thế nữa có người trả lời điện thoại lớn tiếng nơi công cộng, học sinh thì đọc và nhắn tin trong giờ học. Nghiêm trọng hơn nữa là khi người ta sử dụng điện thoại di động gần một người đang sử dụng máy đo điều hòa nhịp tim, sóng từ của điện thoại di động có thể gây nhiễu chức năng hoạt động của máy.

Giờ đây người ta phải làm nhiều việc để khắc phục những vấn đề này. Ở nhiều nơi, người ta sử dụng kỹ thuật mới để chặn các cuộc gọi đến điện thoại di động. Hành khách của các hãng hàng không được yêu cầu phải tắt nguồn điện thoại di động khi ở trên máy bay. Khán thính giả tham dự các buổi hòa nhạc phải chỉnh điện thoại di động sang chế độ câm. Tuy vậy những người dùng điện thoại di động e rằng nếu họ không trả lời điện thoại họ sẽ bị vượt mất những cơ hội làm ăn quý giá. Đó là lý do nhiều người không tắt nguồn điện thoại di động ngay cả khi họ bị buộc phải làm như thế.

1. Decide if the following statements are true (T) or false (F) or not mentioned in the text (NI)

Đáp án:

- | | | | |
|------|-------|-------|------|
| 1. F | 2. NI | 3. NI | |
| 4. T | 5. NI | 6. F | 7. T |

2. Find the words or expressions with the following meanings

Đáp án:

- | | | |
|---------------------|---------------|---------------|
| 8. took off | 9. regulate | 10. interfere |
| 11. concert hall(s) | 12. pacemaker | |

WRITING

Write a confirmation letter

Đáp án gợi ý:

1)

Dear Tam,

Thanks for your invitation – I'd love to join your picnic next Sunday at the top of Lang Biang mountain! My parents gave me permission to go and my dad

will drop me off at your house at 6:30am on Sunday.

I'll bring my camera, hat and suncream. Please let me know what I should bring for lunch, and also if you need my help to prepare anything else for the trip.

Love

Van

2) Dear Mai,

It was great to receive your invitation yesterday. I would love to join your picnic next Sunday to Ba Vi. I have never been there before and visiting the beautiful mountains is one of my most desperate dreams.

I will be at your house at 6:25 a.m. next Sunday and I will bring some food and drinks.

I am looking forward to spending next Monday with you.

Love,

Van

Unit 9

UNDERSEA WORLD

THẾ GIỚI DƯỚI LÒNG BIỂN CẢ

READING

Before You Read

a)

ĐÁP ÁN

1. g 2. f 3. c 4. e 5. h 6. a 7. d 8. b

b)

ĐÁP ÁN

Whales and sea turtles need to be protected.

c)

ĐÁP ÁN

Humpback whales and sea turtles are in danger and need to be protected

Reading Text.

Bài dịch gợi ý

CÁ HEO

Cá heo sống dưới biển như cá, nhưng chúng không phải là cá – chúng là động vật có vú có máu nóng như chúng ta. Cá heo gây bất ngờ cho nhiều người. Những câu chuyện kể về cá heo giúp đỡ con người đã được báo cáo. Chẳng hạn

á heo ngoài khơi Australia và Châu Phi đã giúp ngư dân trong nỗ lực đánh cá oặc đôi khi cứu sống những nạn nhân bị đắm tàu ngoài biển.

Kể từ năm 1988, cá heo tại Trung Tâm Nghiên Cứu Cá Heo ở Australia đã giúp con người theo một cách đặc biệt khác. Những người gặp các vấn đề về sức khỏe – ung thư, yếu kém khả năng nghe nhìn, hoặc bị stress – tham gia một chương trình nhằm để cải thiện chất lượng cuộc sống của họ và củng cố tinh thần của họ. Trẻ con bị hội chứng *down*, là tình trạng khi con người không phát triển bình thường, cũng cho thấy có sự cải thiện hơn sau khi tham gia chương trình. Ngoài cách điều trị bằng y học, bệnh nhân có thể ở bên cạnh cá heo một thời gian. Họ có thể chạm vào lưng cá heo, cho cá heo hôn chân họ, và cùng chơi đùa với cá heo.

Vì lý do đó, bệnh nhân cảm thấy tích cực hơn và có thể quên đi những tình trạng căng thẳng thần kinh, biết thêm những cách cư xử mới, và giao tiếp có hiệu quả hơn với người khác.

Dù cá heo đã mang lại cho con người những điều tốt đẹp, nhiều chuyên gia phản đối việc dùng cá heo cho mục đích giải trí, điều trị y học, hoặc bất cứ mục đích nào khác. Họ cho rằng cá heo thực sự là động vật hoang dã nên được đối xử cẩn trọng bởi vì tiếp xúc với con người làm thay đổi tập tính của chúng. Hối quen tự nhiên tự bảo vệ của chúng khỏi mối nguy hiểm ở nơi hoang dã bị mất đi. Cá heo được xem là bạn của con người, nhưng chúng có thể gây hại cho con người. Khi chúng ta cho chúng thức ăn, cá heo có thể quên dần bản năng vượt khó. Chúng học cách xin ăn để sống còn, mất đi nỗi sợ hãi con người, và có thể gây ra những điều nguy hiểm. Trong khi bơi với cá heo chưa thuần hóa, chúng ta đang quấy nhiễu những con vật này. Chúng có thể nổi giận và cắn tay cho chúng thức ăn. Tóm lại, dù thân thiện hay không, nên để cá heo sống trong môi trường sinh thái tự nhiên.

LEADING

Leading Text

)

ĐÁP ÁN

. T

. F ⇒ Dolphins are fascinating animals because they help people in difficulty.

. T

. F ⇒ Besides using medicine, patients playing with dolphins may get better.

. F ⇒ Frequent contact with people is not good for dolphins because they may lose their natural habits of protecting themselves from danger so as to survive in the wild.

. F ⇒ Dolphins are friendly, but they may bite people when they are disturbed.

ĐÁP ÁN

1. They helped fishermen in fishing or rescued shipwreck victims.
 2. Its purpose is to help people with health problems improve their life quality and strengthen their spirit.
 3. After the program, patients with Down's syndrome feel more positive, learn new behaviors, and communicate better with other people.
 4. Dolphins can get angry and become dangerous when they are disturbed.
 5. Because if dolphins are taken out of their natural habitat, they may lose the habits of protecting themselves and may lose their fear of humans.
- c)

ĐÁP ÁN

- | | |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. mammals | 4. contact (a noun) |
| 2. take the easy way out | 5. bite the hand that feeds (them) |
| 3. disturb | 6. caution |

d)

ĐÁP ÁN

- They are dolphins.
- They are entertaining people / performing in a circus.

ĐÁP ÁN GỢI Ý

- A: In my opinion, people can train dolphins to perform in the circus; however, dolphins must be best kept in their natural environment. I'm in wholehearted agreement with those people about capturing or imprisoning any animal and reducing it to a performing clown just for our amusement.
- B: I am leaving the dolphins free to live their lives as they were meant to. Anyone who has been to a zoo has to admit that the animals in the cage probably didn't look thrilled with their surroundings. They would be much happier in the jungle or the rainforest. So in that case why should they be in the zoo? We don't have to go and stand in some cage to be stared at when we would much rather be down the street or in bed.
- C: I have loved dolphins for most of my life. I used to think that I wanted to be a trainer. But after my many years of watching dolphins in the wild, my heart breaks whenever I see them trapped inside a tank. In the future, I hope to study and help protect the wild populations of dolphins, as well as other endangered animals.
- D: I wonder what it must be like for such wonderful creatures to be taken from their complex social communities, taken away from their families - their parents - their children - and put into a pool far away from their own environment, the deep and beloved sea.

LISTENING

a)

ĐÁP ÁN

Fishermen use harpoons and harpoon guns to kill (catch) whales and other big fish.

b)

ĐÁP ÁN

1. spring 2. recorder 3. singing 4. heart 5. harpoons
6. death 7. feel 8. save

c)

ĐÁP ÁN

1. The sections of the songs assumed spoken by the songwriter are sections 1, 2, 3, 5, 6.

The sections of the songs assumed spoken by the humpback whale are section 4.

2. The song has a sad tune because the writer's uses of the foot rhyme [*vần chân của thơ Anh*] ending in /eil/ (whALE, sAIL, tALE, fAIL, and such words as "shriek", "squeak" "bellow" rouses the sound of somebody's crying or weeping with pain or dying.

1. Spoken by the songwriter: sections 1, 2, 3, 5, 6

Spoken by the whale: section 4

2. This song is sad with its slow and sad tune. Its lyrics reveal the sufferings whales have to endure.

SPEAKING

a)

ĐÁP ÁN

Activities	Why?	Why not?
to eat seafood or fish	tasty, delicious	smelly
to fish with a fishing rod	happy when catching a fish	not want to hurt or kill fish
to keep goldfish as pets	very beautiful and clean	not as lively as dog and cat
to explore the bottom of the sea	practice swimming and diving	tear of water
to go to the circus to see dolphins' performance	dolphins – intelligent and friendly	dangerous

b)

ĐÁP ÁN GỢI Ý

1. Ann: Why doesn't your Mum eat oceanic fish?

Bob: Because she often gets sick when eating it.
 Ann: How about your Dad?
 Bob: Oh, he's always keen on it. He says oceanic fish will supply a lot of *iodine*. This is necessary for our body.

2. Tom: Why did people set those blackbirds free, Dad?

Mr. Dawson: Because they are endangered species. They should be kept in protective natural preserves. They may reproduce and then be released again into the wild.

A: Do you like eating seafood?

B: Yes, I do

A: Why?

B: Because it is not fatty.

C: Do you like keeping goldfish as pets?

D: No

C: No? How come?

D: Because it's a waste of time.

c)

ĐÁP ÁN

Hình 2

A: The whales are blowing water up.

B: Why are they doing it?

A: Because they're exhaling air through their blowholes.

Hình 3

C: Workers are cleaning up the beach.

D: How come they are doing it?

C: Because an oil slick has made the beach dirty.

Hình 4

G: An environmentalist is burying sea turtle eggs in the sand.

H: How come?

G: 'Cause he wants to protect these eggs from being eaten by other animals.

Hình 5.

E: A lot of fish died (are dying)

F: Why did they die (are they dying)?

E: Because of polluted sea water.

ÁP ÁN GỢI Ý

Tom: Why do you look so forlorn?
Dung: 'Cos Andrew hasn't written to me since he went back home.

Nam: Your boy friend's crippled, isn't he?
Linda: Yeah. 'Cause he fell off his bike on his ride to Bristol last Sunday.

Vga: Bob won't talk and write to me any more.
Peter: Why?
Vga: 'Cause I missed the date and he saw me going out with another boy.

Linh: I had to stay out during the night.
Son: Well? How come?
Linh: I came home late, not as I had promised. Dad was so angry.
A: Your neighbor broke his leg. How come?
B: Because he fell off a ladder while cleaning the windows.
C: Why did your classmates fail the English test?
D: Because they didn't learn the lessons well enough
E: You fell asleep in class yesterday. Why?
F: Because I watched a soccer game on TV until 2 a.m. and I had only 3
ours' sleep after
that.

G: You look rather unhappy today. Why?
H: I got only 5 in the English test.

ĐÁP ÁN

ÁP ÁN

	Letter 1	Letter 2	Letter 3	Letter 4
Reason for invitation	going to the movies	going to tri Nguyen Aquarium	Ann and John are passing through	to welcome back Prof. Ali
Statement of invitation + suggestion (time, date, place)	How about going to the movies tonight? at the	Do you feel like joining us? this	Can you come to dinner on Sunday?	I should very much like you, as our advisor, to join us. The date I have in

	Diamond Plaza	Saturday		mind is June 20 at the Swiss Caf
Request for reply	Give me a call	Phone me to confirm	leave me a note before Saturday.	Would this be suitable for you?

b)

ĐÁP ÁN

Letter 1 ⇨ An Informal Letter

(1) Dear Laura

(6) Sorry we've been out of touch for so long.

(4) As the vacation is coming, it'd be nice to see you here with my family.

(7) Rosa and Carol will be here, too. So we all can go scuba diving together explore

the sea near my house.

(3) If you can come, just drop me a line say when you'll arrive.

(1).With love,

(5) Kerry

Letter 2 ⇨ A Formal Letter

(3) Dear Mr. Lee

(2) Thank you for your letter on January 20.

(5) In view of your interest of our school and students, we are extreme happy to welcome your visit.

(1) Two possible dates which we can offer are February 25 and March 15.

(4) Could you please let us know if one of these is suitable for you?

(7) Yours sincerely,

(6) Nguyen Thi Van

c)

ĐÁP ÁN GỢI Ý

1. Formal Invitation Letter

Dear Mr. Dean Brown,

Will you be one of our lecturer at our talk we are planning? We shall be glad if you can arrange to come over to the talk on Thursday 25th.

The talk is about how to protect endangered sea animals and there is a movie to illustrate the topic.

I enclose an outline of the schedule for your attention.

We will be expecting you.

Sincerely yours,

Myra T. Maxwell

. Informal Invitation Letter

Dear Laura,

I am glad that you are visiting Vietnam again. I came to your hotel, but you were not in.

Guess what we are doing next Sunday?

Well, our class have planned to spend the whole Sunday morning cleaning 'huân An beach

- the volunteer work that Vietnamese students often do in summer.

It must be great fun if you join us. Also, some of my classmates want to make friends with

you.

Please ring me up to confirm before Sunday.

Yours ever,

Minh Thu

. Formal Invitation Letter

Dear Mr. Dean Brown,

We know that you are an enthusiastic wildlife protection activist who is famous for many moving speeches about endangered animals.

We should like to invite you, as Chair of the Green Peace Association, to talk to the students in our school about how to protect endangered sea animals.

The date we have in mind is February 25. Please let us know if this is convenient for you.

Yours sincerely,

Nguyen Van Tu

Secretary of the Youth League of Hung Vuong High School

. Informal invitation letter

Dear Carol,

I stop by to let you know that my class has a very interesting plan. We'll clean the beach near our school this Sunday morning.

Do you feel like joining us? I'm sure you'll have more Vietnamese friends here.

Phone me to confirm. I'll be home after 5 p.m.

Lan

LANGUAGE FOCUS

Word Study

Formation of Compound Adjectives

Tính từ kép (Compound Adjectives) trong bài này có cấu trúc sau:

ADJECTIVE + NOUN-ED

Hậu tố -ED thêm vào sau danh từ có hình thức như phân từ quá khứ của động từ (Past Participle).

Các tính từ dùng trong cấu trúc này thường là:

1. Chỉ màu sắc, như *blue, red, green, yellow*
2. Chỉ tính chất, phẩm chất, như: *hot, cold, long, short, good, bad, wrong, right, full, empty*
3. Chỉ kích thước, chiều hướng, như: *long, short, right, left, high, low, deep, near, far*
4. Chỉ số lượng, như: *many*

Ví dụ: *blue-blooded* (thuộc gia đình quý phái) – *green-eyed* (hay ghen) – *red-blooded* (cường tráng) – *red-handed* (bị bắt quả tang) – *yellow-bellied* (nhút nhát) – *hot-tempered* (tính nóng) – *cool-headed* (bình tĩnh) – *cold-blooded* (có máu lạnh, cảm) – *full-blooded* (rất ráo, hết lòng) – *full-bodied* (có vị đậm nồng) – *full-sized* (có kích cỡ bình thường) – *empty-handed* (trắng tay, phũ tay) – *empty-headed* (tư lự, bí suy nghĩ) – *right-handed* (thuận tay phải) – *left-handed* (thuận tay trái) – *right-angled* (vuông góc) – *low-pitched* (âm thanh trầm) – *high-pitched* (âm thanh cao, the thé) – *deep-rooted* = *deep-seated* (ăn sâu tận gốc rễ) – *slow-witted* (tiếp xúc chậm ≠ *quick-witted*) – *near-sighted* = *short-sighted* (cận thị ≠ *far-sighted*) – *wrong-headed* (xét đoán sai lầm) – *short-handed* (thiếu nhân công) – *short-staffed* (thiếu nhân lực) – *many-sided* (đa dạng; có nhiều cạnh)

ĐÁP ÁN

- | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. warm-blooded | 2. fair-haired | 3. bad-tempered |
| 4. blue-eyed | 5. long-necked | 6. empty-headed |
| 7. cold-hearted | | |

Grammar

a) Restrictive Relative Clauses (with WHO, THAT, or WHICH)

ĐÁP ÁN

1. Chinese people have a very special kind of soup that/ which is made from shark's fin.
2. A lot of fish that/ which live in the polluted sea die every day.
3. We have a new teacher that/ who (m) I really like.
4. Many people that/ who eat puffer fish, a very poisonous species, get sick and die every day.
5. She'll tell you a story that/ which will surprise you.

b) Non-Restrictive Relative Clauses (with WHICH)

Khi *Antecedent* đi trước mệnh đề quan hệ quá rõ ràng, thông tin do mệnh đề quan hệ nêu lên không cần thiết mà chỉ có mục đích thêm thông tin chứ không có tác dụng phân biệt cụ thể.

Số sánh:

. *Elephants that love mice are very unusual.* (Chỉ chú ý đến loài voi đang được
cặp: loài voi thích chuột nhất).

. *Elephants, which are large and grey, can sometimes be found in zoos.*

(Ngụ ý nói đến tất cả loài voi).

. *Jupiter, which is in the solar system, is the nearest planet to our earth.* (Chỉ
duy nhất một hành tinh có tên là Jupiter – Sao Thủy).

Chú ý:

Non-restrictive relative clauses thường được phân cách với phần câu còn
lại bằng dấu phẩy (commas) trước mệnh đề quan hệ này (và sau, nếu mệnh đề
này kết thúc câu).

KHÔNG dùng THAT trong **Non-restrictive relative clauses**.

ÁP ÁN

a. The Nile, **which** is in Egypt, is the home of a great variety of fish.

a. Yesterday I visited Tri Nguyen Aquarium, **which** has various species of fish.

l. The movie Harry Potter, **which** I'm longing to see, is coming soon.

a. Then he was caught in a mouth of a white shark, **which** is one of the most
dangerous sea creatures.

a. The most beautiful park, **which** has a lot of big trees, is opposite my house.

The Passive Voice

CTIVE VOICE:

UBJECT + MODAL + VERB + OBJECT

ASSIVE VOICE:

UBJECT + MODAL + BE + PAST PARTICIPLE + BY-OBJECT

ÁP ÁN

The garage is cleaned ever day.

Hundreds of sea turtle eggs have been found and buried today.

Why aren't dolphins classified as fish?

Tons of shellfish were exported to Japan last year.

Lots of junk mail is sent to our office every day, which really annoys us.

Or: We are really annoyed that lots of junk mail is sent to our office every day.

Are dolphins' lives affected by contact with people?

BÀI TẬP Củng Cố 9

A. PHONETICS

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in the same line.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. dol <u>ph</u> in | B. nep <u>h</u> ew | C. lau <u>gh</u> | D. cou <u>gh</u> |
| 2. A. pat <u>i</u> ent | B. ques <u>t</u> ion | C. spec <u>i</u> es | D. anc <u>i</u> ent |
| 3. A. trea <u>t</u> ment | B. fe <u>e</u> d | C. fri <u>e</u> ndly | D. peo <u>p</u> le |
| 4. A. effo <u>r</u> t | B. sho <u>r</u> t | C. wa <u>r</u> m | D. cau <u>t</u> ion |
| 5. A. ne <u>w</u> | B. hu <u>m</u> an | C. rescu <u>e</u> | D. tou <u>c</u> h |

II. Choose the word whose stress pattern is different from the rest in each group.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|----------------|------------------|----------------|
| 6. A. communicate | B. occasional | C. fascinating | D. improvement |
| 7. A. animal | B. condition | C. dangerous | D. fisherman |
| 8. A. improve | B. protect | C. shipwreck | D. disturb |
| 9. A. automobile | B. exportation | C. entertainment | D. opposition |
| 10. A. annoy | B. surprise | C. purpose | D. pollute |

B. USE OF LANGUAGE.

Choose the word or phrase (A, B, C or D) that best fits the blank space in each sentence.

11. I cut myself and my finger's _____.
A. blooded B. bled C. bleeding D. bloody
12. The children watched, _____, as the picture began to appear.
A. fascinated B. fascinative C. fascinating D. fascinatio
13. They sometimes meet for a drink after work. Sometimes has the same meaning as _____.
A. always B. occasionally C. often D. usually
14. Dad suggested that we _____ go out for some fresh air after doing our homework.
A. must B. can C. should D. have to
15. Despite his cries, no one came to his _____.
A. assistance B. assisting C. assisted D. assistant
16. Nowadays we say someone is 'speech-_____, not dumb.
A. impairing B. impairment C. impaired D. impair
17. This is a great _____ on your previous work.
A. improvement B. improve C. improving D. improved
18. Laughter is the best _____.
A. medicines B. medicine C. medical D. medicinal

9. It is _____ practice to inform somebody if you want to leave early.
A. normal B. usual C. casual D. routine
10. Our parents have lost _____ with the slow pace of our progress in studies.
A. patient B. impatience C. patience D. patients
1. He was feeling very _____ and tired.
A. stress B. stressed C. stressful D. stressing
2. They _____ very politely towards their guests.
A. behaviour B. behaving C. behaved D. behavior
3. Dolphins use sound to _____ with each other.
A. communicate B. communication
C. communicative D. communicating
4. She was always so funny and _____.
A. entertaining B. entertainer C. entertainment D. entertained
5. They expressed _____ optimism about a solution to the inflation.
A. dangerous B. careful C. caution D. cautious
6. They huddled together _____ themselves from the wind.
A. protected B. protect C. protective D. protecting
7. The sea turtle is an _____ species.
A. danger B. dangerous
C. endangered D. endangering
8. I 'd like to report the _____ of a package.
A. loss B. lost C. losing D. loser
9. Sunglasses can prevent the sun's _____ ultra-violet rays.
A. harm B. harmful C. harming D. unharmed
10. Careless hunting and fishing may bring about the destruction of wildlife _____.
A. whatever happens B. certainly
C. accordingly D. as you wish

. READING.

Read the passage below carefully then choose the right word given (A, B, C, or D) and fill in each space:

The shark is a meat-eating fish and one of the most feared animals of the sea. Scientists (31).....about 250 species of fish as sharks. These fish live in oceans (32).....the world, but they are most common in warm seas.

Sharks (33).....greatly in size and habits. Whale sharks, the largest kind of shark, may grow 60 feet long. A whale shark, weighs up to 15 short tons, more than twice (34).....much as an African elephant. The smallest sharks may (35)..... only four inches long and weigh less than one ounce.

Some kinds of sharks live in the depths of the ocean, but (36).....a found near the surface. Some species live in coastal waters, but other (37).....far out at sea. A few species can even live in (38).....water

All sharks are carnivores (meat-eaters). Most of them eat (39).....fish including other sharks. A shark's only natural enemy is a larger shark. Sharks eat their prey whole, or they tear off large chunks of flesh. They also (40)..... on dead or dying animals.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|------------------|------------|---------------|
| 31. A. classify | B. type | C. sort | D. rank |
| 32. A. over | B. in | C. about | D. throughout |
| 33. A. change | B. differentiate | C. vary | D. estrange |
| 34. A. so | B. as | C. too | D. not |
| 35. A. measure | B. span | C. stretch | D. expand |
| 36. A. another | B. they | C. those | D. others |
| 37. A. inhabit | B. dwell | C. survive | D. exist |
| 38. A. oceanic | B. fresh | C. salty | D. brine |
| 39. A. alive | B. living | C. live | D. lively |
| 40. A. feed | B. eat | C. live | D. swim |

D. WRITING.

I. Turn the following into passive sentences.

41. He suggested allowing council tenants to buy their houses.
42. The court tried the man, found him guilty and sent him to prison.
43. They are repairing my piano at the moment.
44. Passengers shouldn't throw away their tickets as inspectors may check these during the journey.
45. The guest ate all the sandwiches and drank all the beer. They left nothing.

II. Rewrite the following sentences, using conditionals.

46. Lâm was late for the first class because he got up late.

If Lâm

47. I have no bicycle, so I have to leave for school very early.

If I

48. I'd advise you to study better.

If I

49. I am so busy that I cannot join your trip to Yên Tử.

If I

50. The teacher punished Minh for his rudeness.

ĐÁP ÁN

A. PHONETICS

I.

1. B 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. D

II.

6. C 7. B 8. C 9. A 10. C

B. USE OF LANGUAGE

11. C 12. A 13. B 14. C 15. A 16. C 17. A 18. B 19. A 20. D

21. B 22. C 23. A 24. C 25. D 26. B 27. C 28. A 29. A 30. B

C. READING

31. A 32. D 33. C 34. B 35. A

36. D 37. B 38. B 39. C 40. A

D. WRITING

I.

41. He suggested council tenants *being allowed* to buy their houses.
42. The man *was tried, found* guilty and *sent* him to prison by the court.
43. My piano *is being repaired* (by them) at the moment.
44. Passengers' tickets shouldn't *be thrown* away as these *may be checked* by inspectors during the journey.
45. All the sandwiches *were eaten* and all the beer *were drunk* by the guests. Nothing *was left* (by them).

II.

46. If Lâm had not got up late, he would not have been late for the first class.
47. If I had a bicycle, I would not have to leave for school so early.
48. If I were you, I would study better.
49. If I were not so busy, I would be able to join your trip to Yên Tử.
50. If Minh had not been so rude, Mrs. Lan would not have punished him.

Unit 10

CONSERVATION

VIỆC BẢO TỒN TÀI NGUYÊN

READING

BEFORE YOU READ

ĐÁP ÁN

Damages	Solutions
Picture a: Water pollution	1. Clean up beaches.
Picture b: Forest destruction	2. Control the cutting down of trees
Picture c: Wildlife extinction	3. Ban wildlife poaching and trading

Reading Text

BÀI DỊCH GỢI Ý

CÔNG VIÊN QUỐC GIA NAM CÁT TIÊN

A. Bảo tồn di sản của con người chứng tỏ là một hành vi có giá trị văn hóa lớn lao và là hành vi của lối sống tiên tiến. Một bức tranh khảm gồm rừng và đa dạng động vật hoang dã ở Nam Cát Tiên đã được Vườn Quốc Gia Nam Cát Tiên bảo vệ từ khi nó được chính quyền trung ương thành lập vào năm 1992. Nếu không có việc thành lập đó, hầu hết hệ sinh thái của vùng đó sẽ bị phá hủy trầm trọng. Hiện nay, Vườn Quốc Gia Nam Cát Tiên được khai thác làm địa điểm du lịch sinh thái vì vẻ đẹp và vì sự phát triển về kinh tế của nó.

B. Công viên này có sự đa dạng lớn về chủng loại. Tổng cộng có 1.610 loại thực vật với 7 mẫu sinh thái khác nhau. Các mẫu rừng và vị trí địa lý là nơi sinh sống cho loài động vật độc nhất vô nhị vùng nhiệt đới: các loài động vật có vú, bò sát, lưỡng cư, chim, cá, và côn trùng. Các khách du lịch sinh thái thích đến đó vì họ vừa thưởng thức cảnh đẹp vừa đóng góp cho việc bảo tồn môi trường thiên nhiên.

C. Là địa điểm du lịch sinh thái, nó có thể đem đến cho du khách cảnh đẹp ở khu bảo tồn sinh quyển. Du khách có thể lần theo dấu vết các con thú hoang và có thể ngắm nhìn chúng sẵn mỗi ban đêm. Ngoài ra, họ còn có thể đi thuyền dọc sông Đồng Nai đến Bàu Sấu để xem các điệu múa duyên dáng của chim công.

D. Hiện nay, ngày càng nhiều du khách đi du lịch sinh thái đến Vườn Quốc Gia Nam Cát Tiên. Nhờ đó, nền kinh tế của địa phương đang phát triển. Điều này khiến cho chính quyền địa phương càng quan tâm hơn vào việc phát triển du lịch sinh thái ở đó bởi vì việc này có thể làm tăng trưởng kinh tế và cung cấp thêm quỹ cho việc bảo tồn.

Notes: mosaic: bức tranh khảm đá, thủy tinh ... nhiều màu sắc

ÁP ÁN

Tour Discoveries

Paragraph C

Benefits of the Park

Paragraph D

Nam Cat Tien National Park as an Ecotourism Site

Paragraph A

Significant Biological Diversity

Paragraph B

ÁP ÁN

c 2. e 3. a 4 d 5. b

ÁP ÁN

Nam Cat Tien National Park is exploited as an ecotourism site because of its beauty and its economic development.

There is a total of 1,610 flora species with seven different habitat types and species of mammals, reptiles, amphibians, birds, fish, and insects.

They develop ecotourism there to promote the economy and provide more funds for conservation.

His viewpoint is that developing ecotourism in Nam Cat Tien National Park can promote the economy and provide more funds for conservation work.

LISTENING

ĐÁP ÁN

- . Hunting rare animals
- . Damaging young trees/ bushes
- . Building campfires
- . Causing damages to forests

ÁP ÁN

- . national park 2. wildlife 3. feed; tease 4. lifestyles
- . fauna and flora 6. educational 7. chopping; fish
- . conservation/ preservation

ĐÁP ÁN GỢI Ý

- . We should not tease animals because they will get sick and cannot live long.
- . Don't cause damage to forests because this will do harm to nature.
- . Don't kill animals / catch fish or food because these animals will become extinct
- . Don't feed animals in conservation areas/ nature reserves because this will harm to these animals.

SPEAKING

a)

ĐÁP ÁN GỢI Ý

Nam: Have you ever thought of recycling?

Mai: Well, (1) I think we should recycle things such as bags, cans, and bottles

Nam: Don't you think it might be a good idea to conserve nature?

Mai: Er, (2) I think it is. We'd better cut down on using wood for cooking and building.

Nam: Why don't people save energy?

Mai: Well, (3) they could have thought that natural resources are endless / and never used up.

Nam: Don't you think it might be a good idea to reduce water pollution?

Mai: Er, (4) yes, of course. One thing we could do is not dumping garbage into rivers, lakes or the sea.

Nam: Have you ever thought of protecting wildlife from extinction?

Mai: Um, (5) I think people should protect endangered animals in wildlife natural preserves.

2. I think it is. We should conserve nature, i. e. control the cutting down of trees and keep the river clean.

3. Maybe because they don't know the importance of conservation.

4. Yes, I think we should reduce water pollution by not throwing trash into the river

5. We have. One thing we could do is to keep rare animals in their natural habitats.

b)

ĐÁP ÁN GỢI Ý

1. Student 1: What should people do to prevent wildlife extinction?

Student 2: One thing they could do is to keep rare animals in their natural habitat.

2. Student 3: Why don't people care about deforestation?

Student 4: It might be a good idea to tell them to control the cutting down of trees.

3. Student 5: Why don't ecotourists stop littering the national parks?

Student 6: It would be better if they are advised to use environment-friendly products.

4. Student 7: What should be done to prevent forest fire?

Student 8: Campers are not allowed to build campfires in national parks.

Situation 1

Student 1: Have you ever thought of reducing deforestation?

Student 2: I think we should control the cutting down of trees.

Situation 2

Student 1: Why don't you reduce littering?

Student 2: It would be better if we used environment-friendly products.

c)

ĐÁP ÁN GỢI Ý

Do's	Don'ts
1. Learn the rules of camp site 2. Learn to be friendly with nature 3. Learn about the value of the environment to human beings 4. Use environment-friendly products / things 5. Bring a backpack with a change of shoes and clothes 6. Should bring a refillable water bottle and snack/lunch 7. Bring first-aid kit in case of allergies or special dietary needs.	1. Damage, destroy the remains of cultures 2. Pollute or damage the marine ecosystem in any way. 3. Dispose of wastes in unmarked places. 4. Pick of plants or endanger the vegetation in any sense. 5. Build any camp fire. 6. Smoke at unmarked places 7. Hunt, fish, or disturb the animals

Do's	Don'ts
Use environment-friendly products/ things Learn to be friendly with nature Learn about the value of the environment to human beings	Litter in national parks. Tease and feed animals Kill fish Chop young trees Build campfires

WRITING.

Writing A Letter of Acceptance Or Refusal

a)

1. Invitation Letter

The language used to express acceptance

- Thank you very much for your invitation.
- I'd be very happy to come.

2. Reply Letter

The language used to express refusal

- Thank you for your invitation, but unfortunately I'm quite unable to come.
- I'm sorry but I can't make it.

b)

ĐÁP ÁN GỢI Ý

Letter of Acceptance

June 7, 200_

Dear Dung Nhi,

We shall be delighted to attend your wedding on Wednesday, June the twelfth, at three o'clock.

We wish you and Mr. Bình every happiness.

Sincerely yours,

Hoàng

Letter of Refusal

June 4, 2008.

Dear Dung Nhi,

I am so sorry that I will be unable to attend your wedding. The Saigontour is sailing to Singapore on the tenth and Father, Mother and I have engaged passage.

Let me wish you and Mr. Bình every happiness.

Sincerely yours,

Hoàng

Dear Trang,

A Sunday morning working on the beach sounds exciting to me. Unfortunately my plans have changed somewhat, and I'm leaving Vietnam earlier than expected. I'm sorry to miss you, but perhaps I could take part in the activity next year.

Until then, kindest regards,

Alex

VI. LANGUAGE FOCUS

Word study

ĐÁP ÁN

1. conservation

3. prevention

5. reduction

2. destruction

4. protection

Grammar

a) The Modal Auxiliary **SHOULD / SHOULDN'T**

Notes: **should** is a modal verb (negative **should not**, short form **shouldn't**)
[nên; không nên]

1. used to show what is right, appropriate, etc., especially when criticizing sb's actions:

- You **shouldn't** drink and drive.
- He **should** have been more careful.
- A present for me?
- You **shouldn't** have! (= used to thank sb politely)

2. used for giving or asking for advice:

- You **should** stop worrying about it.
- **Should** I call him and apologize?
- I should wait a little longer, if I were you.
- (*ironic*) 'She doesn't think she'll get a job.' 'She **should** worry, with all her qualifications

(= she does not need to worry).' [ngụ ý mỉa mai]

3. used to say that you expect sth is true or will happen:

- We **should** arrive before dark.
- I **should** have finished the book by Friday.
- The roads **should** be less crowded today.

4. used to say that sth that was expected has not happened:

- It **should** be snowing now, according to the weather forecast.
- The bus **should** have arrived ten minutes ago.

5. (BrE, formal) used after *I* or *we* instead of would for describing what you would do if sth

else happened first:

- If I were asked to work on Sundays, I **should** resign.

6. (formal) used to refer to a possible event or situation:

- If you **should** change your mind, do let me know.
- In case you **should** need any help, here's my number.
- **Should** anyone call (= if anyone calls), please tell them I'm busy.

7. used as the past form of **shall** when reporting what sb has said:

- He asked me what time he **should** come. (= His words were: 'What time shall I come?')

- (BrE, formal) I said (that) I should be glad to help.

8. (BrE) used after **that** when sth is suggested or arranged:

- She recommended that I **should** take some time off.
- In order that training **should** be effective it must be planned systematically.

DÁP ÁN

1. I think we **should** treat toxic chemicals before discharging them into the river.
2. Well, we **should** not use rhino horns and their associated products.
3. I think we **should** control deforestation.
4. Well, we **should** reduce smoke and exhaust gas.
5. I think we **should** not build campfires in national parks.
6. Well, we **should** use less energy/ gas.
7. I think we **should** control the use of gas.

b) Conditional Sentences: Type 2 (or UNREAL PAST)

Example.

- *If an elephant and a mouse **fell** in love, they **would have** many problems*

Although **fell** is in the past tense, we are talking about a hypothetical situation that might exist now or at any time, but we are not referring to the past. We call this use the **unreal past**.

In conditional sentences, type 2, the time is **now or any time**, and the situation is **unreal**.

They are **not** based on **fact**, and they refer to an **unlikely or hypothetical condition** and its **probable result**. The use of the past tense after 'if' indicates **unreality**. We can nearly always add a phrase starting with "but", that expresses the real situation:

- *If the weather **weren't** so bad, we **would go** to the park (... but it is bad so we can't go).*

- *If I **were** the Queen of England, I **would give** everyone £100. (... but I'm not, so I won't).*

Uses:

1. To make a statement about something that is not real at present, but is possible:

- *I **would visit** her if I **had** time. (= I haven't got time but I might have some time)*

2. To make a statement about a situation that is not real now and never could be real:

- *If I **were** you, I'd **give up** smoking (but I could never be you).*

Examples:

a. If I **were** a plant, I **would love** the rain.

b. You **wouldn't need** to read this if you **understood** English grammar.

f. They **wouldn't invite** her if they **didn't like** her

3. **Unless** can be used in this type of conditional sentences.

a. Unless he **were** very ill, he would be at work.

- b. I wouldn't eat that food unless I *were* really hungry.
- c. She would be here by now unless she *were* stuck in the traffic.

DÁP ÁN

1. They would suffer from a shortage of energy and air pollution.
2. Local people would suffer from a shortage of fish for food soon.
3. People would suffer from sea pollution.
4. Polar bears would become extinct soon.
5. We would suffer from air pollution/ a shortage of gas.
6. The Earth would be damaged. / Humans would suffer from natural disasters.
7. Forests in national parks would be destroyed.

) Conditional Sentences: Type 3

In a Type 3 conditional sentence, the tense in the 'if' clause is the **past perfect**, and the tense in the main clause is the **perfect conditional**:

In these sentences, the time is **past**, and the situation is **contrary to reality**. The facts they are based on are the **opposite** of what is expressed.

Type 3 conditional sentences, are truly **hypothetical** or **unreal**, because it is now too late for the condition or its result to exist. There is always an unspoken **but... " phrase:**

· If I ***had worked*** harder I ***would have passed*** the exam (but I didn't work hard, and I didn't pass the exam).

More examples:

- a. If ***I'd known*** you were in hospital, I ***would have visited*** you.
- b. I ***would have bought*** you a present if ***I'd known*** it was your birthday.
- c. If ***they'd had*** a better goalkeeper they ***wouldn't have lost*** the game.
- d. If you ***had told*** me you were on the Internet, ***I'd have sent*** you an e-mail.
- e. ***Would you have bought*** an elephant if ***you'd known*** how much they eat?

DÁP ÁN

1. wouldn't have suffered...
2. would have been conserved.
3. hadn't discharged...
4. had reduced...
5. had been thrown...
6. wouldn't have endured...
7. had used...
8. wouldn't have been destroyed.

BÀI TẬP Củng Cố 10

A. PHONETICS

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in the same line.

- | | | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. A. <u>tour</u> ism | B. <u>to</u> wer | C. <u>po</u> wer | D. <u>ho</u> ur |
| 2. A. <u>flour</u> ish | B. <u>go</u> vernment | C. <u>cult</u> ural | D. <u>fa</u> una |
| 3. A. <u>wild</u> | B. <u>fore</u> st | C. <u>con</u> tribute | D. <u>de</u> stroyed |
| 4. A. <u>dam</u> age | B. <u>gar</u> age | C. <u>heri</u> tage | D. <u>vill</u> age |
| 5. A. <u>the</u> y | B. <u>pre</u> y | C. <u>key</u> | D. <u>paid</u> |

II. Choose the word whose stress pattern is different from the rest in each group.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|----------------|-----------------|--------------|
| 6. A. geographical | B. authorities | C. estalishment | D. conserva |
| 7. A. tropical | B. solution. | C. beautiful | D. biospher |
| 8. A. significant | B. environment | C. diversity | D. ecotouris |
| 9. A. develop | B. extinction | C. heritage | D. habitat |
| 10. A. travel | B. exploit | C. provide | D. enjoy |

B. USE OF LANGUAGE

Choose the word or phrase (A, B, C or D) that best fits the blank space in each sentence.

11. She realized that her youth and inexperience were being
A. exploiting B. exploited C. exploitation D. exploitation
12. are vacations designed so that the tourists damage the environment as little as possible.
A. heroism B. ecotourism C. economics D. metropolis
13. He studied politics and Marxist economics at Hanoi University.
A. economist B. economics C. economical D. economize
14. My father's interests are very: sports, music, drama and astronomy.
A. diverse B. diversify C. diversion D. diversity
15. The importance of Ho Chi Minh City is due to its location.
A. geographer B. geographical
C. geography D. geographics
16. Frogs, toads and newts are all
A. animals B. insects C. species D. amphibians
17. Snakes, crocodiles, tortoises are
A. fauna B. worms C. reptiles D. preserves
18. Dad has used repellent to prevent his garden roses from damage.
A. reptile B. insect C. animal D. amphibian

9. When Mr. Dawson is elected Prime Minister, people country can expect changes in the political
- A. scene B. landscape C. view D. sight
10. People have £5, 000,000 to the earthquake fund.
- A. contributed B. contribution
C. contributing D. contribute
1. is the part of the earth's surface and atmosphere in which plants and animals can live.
- A. space B. planet C. land D. biosphere
2. Most of inhabitants in this town could their family tree back to the 16th century.
- A. plant B. set up C. trace D. originate
3. She performed the song with the natural of a ballet dancer.
- A. graceful B. grace C. behaviour D. behaving
4. The season ended with a for Owen, when he scored in the final minute of the match.
- A. flourish B. flourishing
C. flourishment D. flourishings
5. Hue has been as a tourist destination.
- A. promoting B. promoted C. promotion D. promote
6. The hospital is trying to raise for a new kidney machine.
- A. money B. fees C. payment D. funds
7. If they got married early, they would not have had so many children.
- A. have not B. did not C. had not D. would not
8. What would happen if thereno fire? ~ People would eat everything uncooked.
- A. is B. was C. would be D. were
9. you tried more, you would not pass the next exam.
- A. If B. Unless C. Because D. Although
10. My parents lent me the money., I couldn't have afforded the trip.
- A. If B. Unless C. When D. Otherwise

%. READING

Read the passage below and choose ONE word (A, B, C, or D) to fill in each blank space.

A Nature Reserve

A nature reserve is a (31) area of importance for wildlife, flora, fauna or features of geological or other special interest, which is reserved and managed for conservation and to provide special (32) for study or research. Nature

reserves may be designated by government institutions in some countries, such as the United Kingdom, or by (33) landowners, such as charities and research institutions, regardless (34)..... nationality. Nature reserves fall in different IUCN categories (35) on the level of protection afforded by local laws. A wildlife reserve is a protected area of importance for wildlife, (36) reserved and managed for (37) It is possible to do morally acceptable, non-invasive research (38) captive wild animals in instances where such animals are unfit for (39) in the wild (e. g. too tame for rehabilitation injured or deformed) and therefore sanctuary life offers them a chance (40) ... life which would otherwise not be possible.

- | | | | |
|------------------|--------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 31. A. found | B. protected | C. raised | D. kept |
| 32. A. chances | B. occasions | C. advantages | D. opportunities |
| 33. A. private | B. own | C. separate | D. individual |
| 34. A. to | B. of | C. from | D. at |
| 35. A. impacting | B. depending | C. focussing | D. relying |
| 36. A. that | B. it | C. which | D. that |
| 37. A. keeping | B. raising | C. conservation | D. hunting |
| 38. A. at | B. on | C. of | D. to |
| 39. A. survival | B. life | C. living | D. birth |
| 40. A. on | B. at | C. for | D. to |

D. WRITING

Rewrite each of these sentences in such a way that the meaning in the original sentence is retained.

41. I suggest that you should look for another job.
If
42. He lost his job because he was late for work every morning.
If
43. Thank you for your help with this difficult exercise.
If
44. If we can solve the problem soon, it will be better for all concerned.
The sooner
45. We couldn't have managed without Dad's money.
If
46. It was his incompetence that led to their failure.
If it
47. The only reason the party was a success was that a famous film star attended.
Had

48. You can enter a national park unless you obey its regulations.

You can't.....

49. Hurry up or else you'll be late for the first class.

If

50. Shut the window, otherwise it'll get too cold in here.

It

ĐÁP ÁN

A. PHONETICS

- | | | | | |
|----------|------|------|------|-------|
| I. 1. A | 2. D | 3. A | 4. B | 5. C |
| II. 6. A | 7. B | 8. D | 9. C | 10. A |

B. USE OF LANGUAGE

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 11. B | 12. B | 13. B | 14. A | 15. B |
| 16. D | 17. C | 18. B | 19. B | 20. A |
| 21. D | 22. C | 23. B | 24. A | 25. B |
| 26. D | 27. C | 28. D | 29. B | 30. D |

C. READING

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 31. B | 32. D | 33. A | 34. B | 35. C |
| 36. C | 37. C | 38. B | 39. A | 40. C |

D. WRITING

41. If I were you, I would look for another job.
42. If he had not been late for work every morning, he would not have lost his job.
43. If you had not helped me, I could not have done this difficult exercise.
44. The sooner we solve the problem, the better it will be for all concerned.
45. If Dad had not given us money, we couldn't have managed.
46. If it hadn't been for his incompetence, they would not have failed.
47. Had it not been for the attendance of a famous film star, the party would not have been a success / would have been a failure.
48. You can't enter a national park if you don't you obey its regulations.
49. If you don't hurry, you will be late for the first class.
50. It'll get too cold in here if you don't shut the window.

UNIT 11

NATIONAL PARKS

READING

Before You Read

Đoạn Trích A: Công viên này ở miền Trung Việt Nam, cách Bãi Biển Cảnh Dương chỉ chừng 20 cây số. Công viên này là nơi sinh sống cho một số động vật có nguy cơ tuyệt chủng như bò trắng, trâu rừng.

Đoạn Trích B: Công viên quốc gia này ở phía Bắc Trung Bộ Việt Nam. Nó cách Ninh Bình 45 cây số. Công viên này là nơi sinh sống cho một loại cây gỗ quý nhất vô nhị gọi là *kim giao*, gỗ được dùng làm đĩa ăn cơm cho các vị vua và giới quý tộc vào thời xưa.

Đoạn Trích C: Công viên quốc gia này ở Cao Nguyên miền trung. Nó cách Thành Phố Hồ Chí Minh 240 cây số. Công viên này là nơi sinh sống của loài bò hoang (gọi là bò *gaur*) được xem như là loại động vật có nguy cơ tuyệt chủng.

ĐÁP ÁN

Extract A $\Rightarrow$ Cuc Phuong National Park

Extract B $\Rightarrow$ Bach Ma National Park

Extract C $\Rightarrow$ Nam Cat Tien National Park

Reading Text

Bài dịch gợi ý

Công viên Quốc Gia Grand Canyon (Hoa Kỳ), thiết lập vào năm 1919, chiếm diện tích 4.931 cây số vuông ở miền tây bắc tiểu bang Arizona. Vành đai phía bắc của hẻm núi có lượng mưa trung bình hàng năm khoảng 660 mi-li-mét trong khi vành đai phía nam chỉ có 400 mi-li-mét. Vành đai phía bắc có biên độ nhiệt lạnh hơn vành đai phía nam bởi vì nó ở độ cao hơn vành đai phía nam 365 mét.

Vườn Quốc Gia Kakadu (Bắc Úc Châu) chiếm diện tích 12.432 cây số vuông phía nam Úc Châu. Công viên được thành lập vào năm 1979 để bảo tồn nền văn hóa của Thổ Dân bản địa và duy trì sự cân bằng hệ sinh thái. Khí hậu nhiệt đới ẩm áp tạo điều kiện tốt cho nhiều loại động thực vật phát triển.

Hiện tại, có khoảng chừng 300 người thổ dân đang sống ở Vườn Quốc Gia Kakadu. Một số thổ dân này được đào tạo để trở thành người chăm sóc và quản lý khu vườn này.

While-reading

a)

Đáp án

National Park	Year of Establishment	Country	Areas (sq. km)
Grand	1919	The United	4,931

Canyon		States	
Kakadu	1979	Australia	12,432

)

Đáp án

- 1) 1. 100 species of reptiles.
2. 50 species of amphibians.
3. The total number of species of birds, reptiles, and amphibians is 365

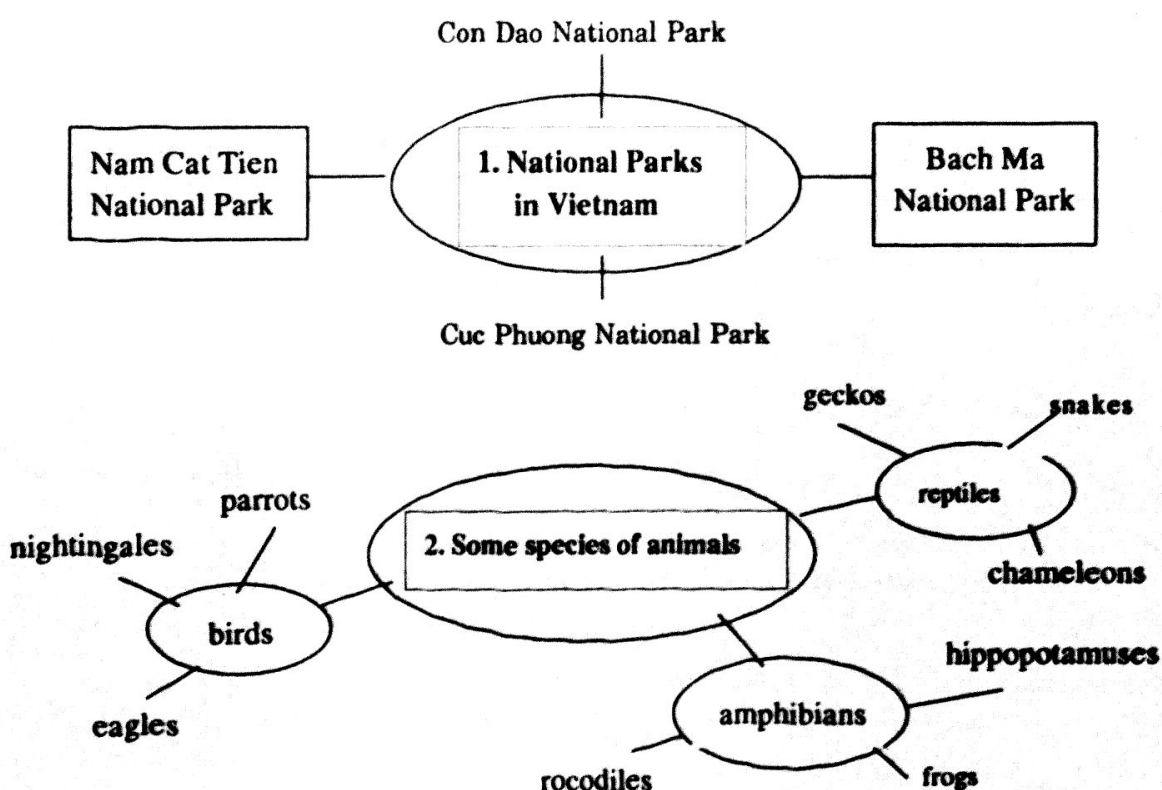
2)

Đáp án

1. reptiles 2. 35 3. Grand Canyon

)

Đáp án



II. LISTENING

)

Đáp án gợi ý:

1. YES. I have been to Nam Cat Tien National Park. In this park tourists can see and take photographs of various kinds of animals and plants. But they can neither build camp fires nor go trekking there without permission and safety warnings.
2. NO. I haven't been to any national park. In my opinion, tourists can see and take photographs of various kinds of animals and plants. They can either build camp fires or go trekking there with permission and protection.

b)

Đáp án

1. go short or long trekking around the forests. ☒
2. go camping ☒
3. go fishing ☐
4. see various kinds of animals and plants. ☒

c)

Đáp án

1. Con Dao
2. Nam Cat Tien National Park.
3. Tourists should be guided on how to protect the natural environment there.

Post Listening

d) ĐÁP ÁN GỢI Ý

Some measures to conserve the environment of national parks.

1. Tourists should be guided on how to protect the natural environment.
2. Tourists should not chop young trees, kill fish, animals, build campfires.
3. Tourists should not leave rubbish or left-overs.

IV. SPEAKING

a)

Đáp án

1. b. It's sort of complicated, but you see, this practice will lead to wildlife extinction in the long run.

2. c. Any body mined if tourists throw garbage into the lakes?

3. a. Well, the thing is, they will suffer from air pollution because smoke from these vehicles polluted the air they breathe.

b)

Đáp án gợi ý

S1: Would it be all right if we shot wild animals in this area?

S2: It's sort of complicated, but we should protect some wild animals and prevent them from extinction.

A: I wonder if hunting permitted in this national park.

B: Of course not. The reason is some endangered animals must be preserved from extinction.

c)

Đáp án gợi ý

S3: Is it all right if we make a camp fire in this park?

S4: It's sort of complicated, but you see, we are growing trees for wood. A
ump fire may set fire to the young trees.

S3: I wonder if can we dump trash in the river, Nam.

S4: I don't think we can. Well, you see. We have to keep waterways clean,
and that's why I'd rather you buried it.

Situation 1: In the park

S1: Anybody mind if people litter in the park?

S2: I'd rather they did, the thing is, this will damage the environment and
pollute the air we breathe.

Situation 2: In the schoolyard

S1: Would it be all right if we chopped young trees in our schoolyard?

S2: Well, you see, we will suffer from heat and that's not good for our health.

. WRITING

áp án

disposable diapers 2. plastic bottles
all paper forms 4. construction debris

áp án

a. In 1965 b. In Australia c. 6 gas blowouts occurred in total: 5 in Bass Strait
and 1 in the Timor Sea.

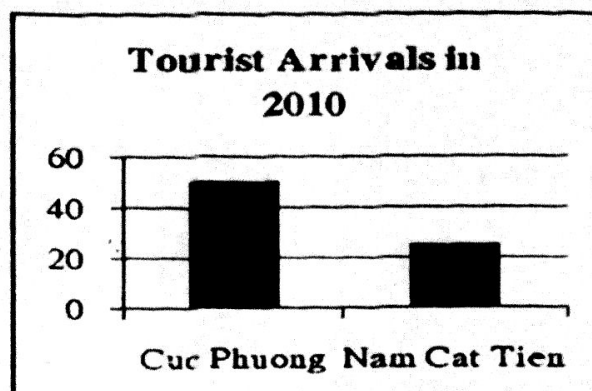
In the graph, the number of gas blowouts that occurred in Australia in 1965
is shown.

According to the graph, there were 5 gas blowouts in Bass Strait and 1 in the
Timor Sea.

In sum, there were 6 gas blowouts.

áp án gợi ý

Draw a graph



2. In the graph, the number of visitors coming to Cuc Phuong National Park and Nam Cat Tien National Park is shown. According to the graph, the number of tourists (about 50,000) attracted to Cuc Phuong will be twice as many as that (about 25,000) to Cat Tien.
3. The chart shows the number of prospective visitors to Cuc Phuong National Park and Nam Cat Tien National Park in the year 2010. Overall, Cuc Phuong will surpass Nam Cat Tien in being a tourist attraction as the number of tourists coming to Cuc Phuong will be approximately 50,000 which is twice the number of visitors to Nam Cat Tien. In conclusion, Cuc Phuong National Park will welcome more visitors than Nam Cat Tien in the next years.

VI. LANGUAGE FOCUS

Word study

Đáp án

- | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. preservation | 3. reserved | |
| 2. preserve | 4. reservation | 5. Reservations |

Grammar

1) **Reduced Relative Clauses:** là cách giản lược (rút ngắn) mệnh đề quan hệ thường được dùng trong Anh văn viết (written English) trang trọng hơn trong Anh văn đàm thoại (spoken English).

Có hai cấu trúc được dùng để giản lược mệnh đề quan hệ (reduce a relative clause)

1. Dùng Participle Phrases.

a) Khi động từ trong mệnh đề quan hệ ở cách chủ động (Active Voice) e.g.

- *There are delays this morning for people travelling to work.*

(= people who are travelling to work)

- *A lorry carrying concrete pipes has overturned.*

(= a lorry which was carrying pipes)

- *the path leading to the church* (= the path which leads/led to the church)

Ngữ phân từ chủ động (active participle phrase) có nghĩa tương đương như
pronoun + a continuous verb

e.g. which is/was carrying,

hoặc

pronoun + a simple verb

e.g. which leads/led.

Nhưng **KHÔNG** được dùng cấu trúc active participle này cho một hành động đơn lẻ đã diễn ra trong quá khứ.

e.g. *The police want to interview people who saw the accident.*

SAI ~~people seeing the accident~~

b) Khi động từ trong mệnh đề quan hệ dùng ở cách bị động (Passive Voice)

Bỏ Đại từ quan hệ WHO, WHICH và các dạng của TO BE. Chỉ giữ lại **past participle** của động từ.

e.g. - These trees ***grown in this region*** will not give fruit.

(= ***which are grown*** in this region)

· I have a message for people ***delayed by the traffic chaos.***

(= people ***who are being delayed***)

· We noticed a pile of stones ***left in the road.***

(= stones ***which had been left*** there)

· food ***sold in supermarkets***

(= food ***which is/was sold*** in supermarkets)

· Dùng To-Infinitive Phrases.

e.g. - New Zealand was the ***first country to give women the vote.***

(= the first country ***which gave*** women the vote)

· Melanie was the ***only person to write a letter of thanks.***

(= the only person ***who wrote*** a letter of thanks)

· The guest on our show is the ***youngest golfer to win the Open.***

· Emma Thompson is the ***most famous actress to appear on stage here.***

· Phải dùng To-Infinitive Phrase để giản lược khi trong mệnh đề quan hệ có những từ này:

* **first, second, etc; next and last; only;**

* **the best, the worst, the most + adjective (the youngest, the most famous).**

Cũng có thể bỏ danh từ đi sau các từ này (ngoại trừ sau **only**) nếu nghĩa của câu rõ ràng.

· The captain was the ***last to leave the sinking ship.*** (= the last person)

· Đáp án

· The police are making great efforts to arrest those ***killing and purchasing*** wild animals.

· People should change the inappropriate lifestyle ***causing destruction to*** natural reserves.

· There should be some measures to protect the humpback whale, ***considered*** an endangered species.

· Poachers still try to kill rhinos kept in protected areas because of big profit.

5. Wild animals living in their natural habitat will have a better and longer life than those kept in protected areas.

II) Passive Voice With Different Verb Forms And With Modals

- | | | |
|--------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
| 1. must be banned | 2. will be organized | 3. were forced |
| 4. are not allowed | 5. is being destroyed | 6. must have been |

BÀI TẬP Củng Cố 11

A. PHONETICS.

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in the same line.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. A. anc <u>i</u> ent | B. mach <u>i</u> ne | C. cult <u>u</u> re | D. pati <u>e</u> nt |
| 2. A. spec <u>i</u> es | B. are <u>a</u> | C. peo <u>p</u> le | D. bea <u>c</u> h |
| 3. A. rept <u>i</u> le | B. prov <u>i</u> de | C. clim <u>a</u> te | D. condit <u>i</u> on |
| 4. A. care <u>t</u> aker | B. faun <u>a</u> | C. flor <u>a</u> | D. war <u>m</u> |
| 5. A. cov <u>e</u> r | B. cult <u>u</u> re | C. souther <u>n</u> | D. mutu <u>a</u> l |

II. Choose the word whose stress pattern is different from the rest in each group.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| 6. A. millimetre | B. kilometre | C. Aborigines | D. temperatue |
| 7. A. preserve | B. species | C. meter | D. balance |
| 8. A. establish | B. tropical | C. Australia | D. amphibian |
| 9. A. annual | B. different | C. condition | D. animal |
| 10. A. environment | B. activities | C. ecology | D. reservation |

B. USE OF LANGUAGE

Choose the word or phrase (A, B, C or D) that best fits the blank space in each sentence.

11. That hotel is a comfortable and well-run _____.
A. establishment B. establishing C. establish D. established
12. Many people care about wildlife species simply because they _____ the earth with us.
A. build B. inhabit C. live D. share
13. This car runs at a(n) _____ speed of 100 miles per hour.
A. balance B. medium C. average D. annual
14. The festival is held _____.
A. annually B. yearly C. by a year D. annual
15. Dad's in bed with a of 40°.
A. temperature B. temperate C. climate D. warmth

6. Wildlife is protected within natural _____.
A. preservation B. preserves C. enclosures D. environment
7. The UN Security Council takes over the _____ of international peace.
A. maintaining B. maintainer
C. maintainage D. maintenance
8. The roofing worker lost his _____ and fell from the beam.
A. place B. post C. balance D. foot
9. The forest would get barren if people _____ more trees for wood.
A. fall B. felled C. fell D. falled
10. He had already made _____ for his wife and children before he passed away.
A. provides B. provisions C. providings D. provide
11. They are establishing a conservation area for endangered _____.
A. specialists B. wildlife C. species D. fauna
12. Every time a wildlife plant or animal species goes _____, we have lost the opportunity to explore new options for food, medicine or other useful resources forever.
A. wrong B. away C. extinct D. out
13. You've got to forget the past and start living _____.
A. For the present B. At present
C. In the present D. To the present
14. A _____ is a person who supervises the care of a property such as an office building or a school.
A. careholder B. shareholder C. gravetaker D. caretaker
15. He _____ as a teacher before becoming an actor.
A. taught B. trained C. took D. turned
16. Mangoes and durians are _____ fruit.
A. tropic B. mountainous C. climatic D. tropical
17. The table is available in several different _____.
A. high B. highly C. heights D. highness
18. We set off at dawn and by sunset we had _____ thirty miles.
A. covered B. recovered C. discovered D. uncovered
19. Zeus was the god of the sky living in _____ Greece.
A. antique B. old C. aged D. ancient
20. Each wonder of the world has its _____ beauty. America is _____ because of the varied cultures of its inhabitants.
A. alone B. unique C. only D. uniquely
21. Who is the first person _____ discover America?
A. who B. whom C. that D. to

32. *Harry Potter*, _____ written by Joanne K. Rowling has been made into movies.
 A. which B. that C. it D.
33. Mr. Dawson is said _____ very skilful at carpentry.
 A. he is B. to be C. being D. be
34. _____ is the plant life, especially all the plants found in a particular country, region, or time regarded as a group.
 A. fauna B. wildlife C. flora D. environment
35. Zoos must now focus on environmental education and the _____ of endangered species.
 A. keeping B. preservation C. protection D. raising

C. READING

Read the passage below carefully then answer questions about it.

Ecosystem is comprised of organisms living in a particular environment such as a forest or a coral reef, and the physical parts of the environment that affect them. The term ecosystem was coined in 1935 by the British ecologist Sir Arthur George Tansley, who described natural systems in "constant interchange" among their living and nonliving parts.

The ecosystem concept fits into an ordered view of nature that was developed by scientists to simplify the study of the relationships between organisms and their physical environment, a field known as ecology. At the top of the hierarchy is the planet's entire living environment, known as the biosphere. Within this biosphere are several large categories of living communities known as biomes that are usually characterized by their dominant vegetation, such as grasslands, tropical forests, or deserts. The biomes are in turn made up of ecosystems. The living, or biotic, parts of an ecosystem, such as the plants, animals, and bacteria found in soil, are known as a community. The physical surroundings, or abiotic components, such as the minerals found in the soil, are known as the environment or habitat.

Any given place may have several different ecosystems that vary in size and complexity. A tropical island, for example, may have a rain forest ecosystem that covers hundreds of square miles, a mangrove swamp ecosystem along the coast and an underwater coral reef ecosystem. No matter how the size or complexity of an ecosystem is characterized, all ecosystems exhibit a constant exchange of matter and energy between the biotic and abiotic community. Ecosystem components are so interconnected that a change in any one component of an ecosystem will cause subsequent changes throughout the system.

36. Which in the following is NOT true?
- A. There is an exchange of matter and energy among components of ecosystems.
 B. Ecosystems make up biomes.

- C. Any change in an ecosystem has no effect on its components.
 D. Ecosystems are different in size and complexity.
7. "... usually characterized by **their** dominant vegetation..." What does **their** refer to?
 A. living communities B. biomes
 C. large categories D. grasslands, tropical forests, and deserts
8. Ecology is _____
 A. the ordered view of nature
 B. the planet's entire living environment
 C. the study of the relationships between organisms and their physical environment
 D. several large categories of living communities
9. The physical surroundings of ecosystem is known as
 A. habitat B. biosphere C. biome D. mangrove
10. A constant exchange of matter and energy between the biotic and abiotic community is made by
 A. swamps B. ecosystems C. coral reefs D. rain forests

11. WRITING. Rewrite these sentences.

. Use participle phrases.

e.g. A new motorway is planned. (It will cost £500 million.)

⇒ A new motorway costing £500 million is planned.

1. Families have been evicted. (They were living in an empty office building.)

Families

2. A chemical company has gone bankrupt. (It employed 4,000 people.)

A chemical company

3. A bridge has been declared unsafe. (It was built only two years ago.)

A bridge

4. People have marched to London. (They are protesting against pollution.)

.....

5. Tennis fans have been queuing all night at Wimbledon. (They hope to buy tickets.)

.....

. Use the to-infinitive structure.

e.g. David offered his help. No one else did.

⇒ David was the only person to offer his help.

6. Olivia's daughter swam a length of the pool. No other girl as young as her did that.

Olivia's daughter was.....

47. The secretaries got a pay rise. No one else did.

The secretaries were.....

48. The pilot left the aircraft. Everyone else had left before him.

49. Mrs Harper became Managing Director. No other woman had done that before.

50. Daniel applied for the job. No other candidate as suitable as him applied.

ĐÁP ÁN

A. PRONUNCIATION

I.

1. C. 2. B. 3. D. 4. A. 5. D.

II.

6. C. 7. A. 8. B. 9. C. 10. D.

B. USE OF LANGUAGE

11. A	12. D	13. C	14. A	15. A
16. B	17. D	18. C	19. B	20. B
21. C	22. C	23. C	24. D	25. B
26. D	27. C	28. A	29. D	30. B
31. C	32. D	33. B	34. C	35. B

C. READING

36. C 37. B 38. C 39. A 40. B

D. WRITING.

41. living in an empty office building have been evicted.

42. employing four thousand people has gone bankrupt.

43. built only two years ago has been declared unsafe.

44. People protesting against pollution have marched to London.

45. Tennis fans hoping to buy tickets have been queuing all night at Wimbledon.

46. the youngest girl to swim a length of the pool.

47. the only people to get a pay rise.

48. The pilot was the last person to leave the aircraft.

49. Mrs Harper was the first woman to become Managing Director.

50. Daniel was the most suitable candidate to apply for the job.

Unit 12

MUSIC

ÂM NHẠC

READING

Before You Read

ĐÁP ÁN

1. a 2. c 3. b 4. d

Leading Text

BÀI DỊCH GỢI Ý

Âm nhạc, nó đóng một vai trò không thể thiếu trong cuộc sống con người và được hầu hết mọi người yêu thích, là sự sắp xếp âm thanh được trình tấu trên một nhạc cụ và/hoặc được hát lên. Tuy nhiên, con người khác nhau sẽ thích các loại nhạc khác nhau.

Nhạc cổ điển chủ yếu dành cho những người nghe có học thức và trang trọng kín đáo. So sánh với nhạc lãng mạn, nó lệ thuộc vào sức hấp dẫn về hình thức nhiều hơn sự kích thích về xúc cảm. Một trong những nhà soạn nhạc cổ điển nổi tiếng nhất là Mozart (1756-1791), mà bản symphony số 40 G Thứ của ông được yêu thích khắp thế giới.

Nhạc thịnh hành (= nhạc Pop), trái lại, thường nói đến loại nhạc không có hình thức cổ điển, xuất hiện đầu thập niên 1900. Nhạc Pop nổi tiếng với nhiều hạng người vì nó gồm những bài hát ngắn có nhịp mạnh và giai điệu đơn giản dễ nhớ. Nhiều thế hệ yêu nhạc Pop có lẽ sẽ không bao giờ quên bài nhạc Pop ngọt ngào như *Papa* do Paul Anka hát.

Rock-'n'-roll, một thể loại nhạc phát triển từ nhạc jazz (có nguồn gốc từ nhạc truyền thống của người Mỹ gốc Phi) và nhạc đồng quê (dân ca miền Tây nông thôn nước Mỹ), mãi cho đến thập niên 1950 mới xuất hiện. Nhờ những bài nổi tiếng như *Heartbreak Hotel*, Elvis Presley (1935-1977) được nổi tiếng là "Vua Rock-'N'-Roll".

Từ Rock-'n'-roll, mãi cho đến thập niên 1960 nhạc rock mới phát triển. Bài *Satisfaction* của ban nhạc *The Rolling Stones* là một ví dụ của âm nhạc hiện đại này có nhịp rất mạnh, trên nền giọng đơn ca và (chủ yếu) đàn guitar điện tử.

Không giống như những thể loại nhạc đó, dân ca, được truyền khẩu, thường do tác giả khuyết danh. Một bài dân ca thường có nhiều dị bản. Một ví dụ cho bài dân ca là *Auld Lang Syne* theo truyền thống được hát vào lúc nửa đêm giao thừa ở Anh.

Notes: *Auld Lang Syne* /O:ld læŋ saɪn/ (phát âm theo tiếng Tô-Cách-Lan cổ)

ĐÁP ÁN

... A learned and serious audience.

2. Classical music has beauty in itself, whereas romantic music arouses people's emotions.
3. Because it consists of short songs with a strong beat and simple tunes which are easy to remember.
4. Because it is transmitted orally. Some words may be omitted or added when the song is transmitted by word of mouth.
5. In the 1950s.
6. He is recognized as the 'King of Rock-'n'-Roll'.
7. It comes from rock-'n'-roll.
8. Electric guitars.

b)

ĐÁP ÁN

- | | |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. learned and serious | 6. jazz and country |
| 2. unknown | 7. 1950s |
| 3. Auld Lang Syne | 8. Heartbreak Hotel |
| 4. the early 1900s | 9. rock-'n'-roll |
| 5. easy to remember | 10. The Rolling Stones |

c) "Music plays an indispensable part in human life." Do you agree? How important to our lives do you think music is? Discuss with your friends to find out the roles of music in society.

ĐÁP ÁN GỢI Ý

1.

A: What is the impact of music on our life, Mr. Dawson?

B: Well, music helps to relax our mind. For example, a baby is easily lulled to sleep by its mother's song. After the whole day of hard work, we will feel relaxed while listening to some songs or tunes.

Music has been proved useful for the promotion of health. For example, in hospitals, patients' pain will be lessened when music is played during an operation. And in business, especially in advertising, music is used to impress consumers with what they are expected to buy. Music can also promote our love for the country. What is your feeling when you hear the national anthem sung? A song's lyrics can bring specified messages that recall where our thoughts connect and go back to, some distant memory, some of our past experience, our happiness or even our love and hatred.

2. Music calms our minds and makes us feel relaxed. Beautiful songs stimulate noble feelings and often strengthen our minds. Music and songs have great educational values in schools and in society. Music in hospitals helps patients relax their minds, thus contributing a part to the treatment of diseases.

II. LISTENING

i)

ĐÁP ÁN

Auld Lang Syne (a.2 – a.13)
classical (b.5 – b.13)
Clementine (n.10 – n.1)
Heal The World (o.12 – o.1)
Son (n.11 – n.13)
Hello (c.2 – g.6)
Elvis (i.6 – m.2)
Blowin' In The Wind (a.1 – h.8 – o.1)
rock (b.3 – e.6)
blues (f.7 – h.9 – j.7)
pop (k.6 – m.4)
folk (b.4 – e.6)
country (f.8 – g.9 – h.9 – i.9 – i.6)

) ĐÁP ÁN

Song title	Artist's Name	Music Type
Auld Lang Syne	Elvis	blues
Blowin' In The Wind	Son	classical
Clementine		country
Heal The World		folk
Hello		pop
		rock

)

ĐÁP ÁN

1. seas	5. mountain	9. ears
2. strike	6. free	10. cry
3. banned	7. see	11. deaths
4. wind	8. sky	12. Died

) In group of four, sing any of the songs you have found out from the table in b)
(You are expected to sing "Hello", or "Heal The World".)

V. SPEAKING

)

ĐÁP ÁN

1. b 2. a 3. d 4. c 5. f 6. e

b)

ĐÁP ÁN GỢI Ý

Mai: Listen to this new song by Phú Quang, Lan. Do you like it?

Lan: Well, I find the tune is lovely, but I can't understand the lyrics.

Mai: It will be all right when you listen to it for the second time. It's so romantic!

Lan: But I can't bear the singer. Mỹ Linh would be better with this song.

Mai: Don't you think the pianist plays well?

Lan: Oh, yes. But it's too loud. I like it played on the violin.

A: This is a new song. What do you think about it?

B: Well, I don't like the lyrics.

C: But I like the tune of this song.

D: It's not too bad, I think.

E: What song are you listening to? It sounds beautiful.

F: It's from a new album by... You like it?

E: Yes. Its tune is lovely.

c)

ĐÁP ÁN GỢI Ý

The composer Trần Hoàn - his real name is Nguyễn Tang Hịch; his pen name is Hồ Thuận An - was born in 1928 in Hai Lang, Quang Tri Province. He joined in both of the national struggles against the French Colonists and the American Imperialists. After that, he became Minister of Culture and Information. Later he was appointed Deputy Manager of The Central Board of Intellectual and Mental Health. He had been the Chairman of Vietnam's Literature And Arts Society. He was presented with a *Ho Chi Minh Award* in 2001.

Some of his famous songs are *Sơn Nữ Ca*, *Lời Người Ra Đi*, *Lời Bác Dặn Trước Lúc Đi Xa*, *Giữa Mạc Tư Khoa Nghe Câu Hồ Nghệ Tĩnh*, *Mùa Xuân Nho Nhỏ*, *Lời Ru Trên Nương*.

With 60 years' experience as a composer, Tran Hoan once said, "If you wish to compose a beautiful song, you have to be qualified with the 5 T's - Tâm Nhãn (Viewpoint), Văn Sống Thực Tiễn (Real Experience), Tâm (Heart), Trình Độ (Proficiency) and Tài (Talent). The first four T's should be achieved by yourselves. But the last T will be appraised through time and by the public."

[Muốn viết được một ca khúc hay, cần phải hội tụ đủ 5 chữ T là Tâm Nhìn, Văn Sống Thực Tiễn, Cái Tâm, Trình Độ, và cuối cùng là phải có Tài. 4 chữ T đầu phải tự thân đạt được, còn chữ cuối cùng thì sẽ do thời gian và công chúng thẩm định.]

WRITING

Writing A Profile

b) *Đáp án gợi ý*

Nguyen Van Ty (1924-)

Nguyen Van Ty is a composer most noted for his revolutionary and lyrical songs.

He was born on March 3rd, 1924 in Nghe An and began to work as a singer in night club in Vinh in 1943. Most of his songs were composed when he was in the army. In 1958 he wrote his first song, *Du am*, which has been noted and favourite for many generations of lovers.

Among his other famous songs are *me yêu con*, *Dang dung Ben Tre*, *Ngươi đi say ho Ke Go*, *Mot khuc tam tinh cua nguoi Ha Tinh*.

In 1967, he worked in Vietnam's Society of Composers, and later, in 1975, he was transferred to the Institute of Music Research of The Ministry Of Culture, in its Second Department in Saigon. He has retired and is living in District I, Ho Chi Minh City.

Nguyen Van Ty's contribution has been influential on the improvement and the enriching of the national musical life.

Trinh Cong Son (1939-2001)

Trinh Cong Son was a composer and singer most known for his love songs and antiwar songs. He was considered (as) "Vietnam's Bob Dylan."

He was born in Dac Lac and grew up in Hue from 1943. In 1958 he wrote his first song named *Uot Mi*; and this song soon became famous. In 1972 Trinh Cong Son won the Japanese Golden Disc with *Ngu Di Con*.

His important achievement is a huge legacy of more than 500 songs, including *Voi vong tay lon*, *toi se đi tham*, *Ha trang*, *Mot coi đi ve*, *Chiec la thu phai*, and *Iay yeu nhau đi*.

Many of his music fans find him unforgettable with his thoughtful statements: There is merely love and human condition in this life. Human condition is finite, whereas love is infinite. We should thus try our best to nourish love so that it could accordingly save condition on the cross of Life." (*Sống giữa đời này chỉ có thân phận và tình yêu. Thân phận thì hữu hạn, tình yêu thì vô cùng. Chúng ta nên làm cách nào nuôi dưỡng tình yêu dù tình yêu có thể cứu chuộc thân phận trên cây thập giá Đời.*)

LANGUAGE FOCUS

Word Study.

Prefix Non-

Tiền tố NON- có gốc từ tiếng Latin (có nghĩa là KHÔNG) thường ghép với tính từ và danh từ để tạo thành từ có ý nghĩa ngược lại. Trong tiếng Anh-Anh (British English) giữa NON- và từ gốc có dấu gạch nối (hyphen); trong tiếng Anh-Mỹ (American English) thường ít thấy dùng gạch nối.

Ví dụ:

NON-ADJECTIVES	NON-NOUNS
non-alphabetic: không xếp theo thứ tự chữ cái	non-aggression: không xâm lăng
non-dairy: không làm từ sữa hay kem	non-appearance: không hiện diện

non-flammable: không dễ cháy
non-human: không có tính người
etc.

non-citizen: không là công dân
non-cooperation: không hợp tác
etc.

DÁP ÁN

1. nonstop 2. nonsmoking 3. nonnegotiable 4. nonrefundable
5. nonprofit 6. nonalcoholic – nonfat 7. nonrenewable 8. nonviolent

Grammar. Information Questions

WH-questions begin with a WH-word.

Chú Thích Ngữ Pháp:

Các câu hỏi với các từ Who, What, Whom, Which, When, Where, Why, How
Whose thường sắp xếp theo cấu trúc sau:

1. Khi **WHO, WHAT, WHICH** làm chủ ngữ câu:

WHO, WHAT, WHICH + VERB + OBJECT / COMPLEMENT...

Ví dụ:

- **Who** is that man?
- **Who** came first?
- **What** made you cry, boy?
- **Which** is your hat, the red or the blue?

2. Khi **WHO** (trong văn viết dùng **WHOM**), **WHAT, WHICH** làm tân ngữ ch
động từ:

WHO(M) + AUXILIARY / MODAL + SUBJECT + VERB

Ví dụ:

- **Who(m)** do you love?
- **Who(m)** have they elected (as) the monitor?
- **What** will you tell her?
- **Which** have you chosen, the blue or the red?

Trong các ví dụ sau, **WHAT** và **WHICH** là determiners, xác định nghĩa ch
danh từ đi theo sau:

- **Which** way is the wind blowing?
- **What** kind of music do you like?

2. Với **WHOSE**, là determiner, có hai cấu trúc:

a) **WHOSE + BE + SUBJECT...?**

- I wonder whose this expensive car is.

b) **WHOSE + NOUN + VERB + SUBJECT?**

- Whose house is that?

3. **WHERE, WHEN**: là trạng từ

/HERE, WHEN + AUXILIARY / MODAL + SUBJECT + VERB?

- Where were you when I came yesterday?
- When will we have a get-together?
- Why haven't you finished the report?
- How often do you practise your English?

HOW: là trạng từ:

a) HOW + AUXILIARY / MODAL + SUBJECT + VERB?

- How do you get to school every day?

b) HOW + ADJECTIVE + BE + SUBJECT + VERB?

- How wide is this room?
- How much is a dozen of eggs?

c) HOW + ADVERB + AUXILIARY / MODAL + SUBJECT + VERB?

- How much do you love him?
- How often do you listen to music?

a)

ÁP ÁN

When was *Blowin' In The Wind* released?

Who was one of Vietnam's greatest composers that wrote many great patriotic songs such as *Len Dang*, *Tien Quan Ca*, *Hon Tu Si*, and *Lang Tu Ca*?

When was Van Cao's *Tien Quan Ca* adopted as the national anthem of the Democratic Republic of Viet Nam?

How many songs did Trinh Cong Son write in his lifetime?

Where is the keynote composer sitting?

Why do you love revolutionary songs?

What is the one thing that various music types have in common?

How did you all feel when your former homeroom teacher sang *Con Duong en Truong* at your yearly class reunion?

It was Not Until ... That ... (Mãi cho đến khi mới)

Notes: This structure is used when emphasis is put on the information between **UNTIL** and **THAT**.

e.g. *It was not until Dad was forty that he got married.*

IT WAS NOT UNTIL + TIME + THAT + SUBJECT + VERB

Until in this structure is the preposition.

e.g. *It was not until midnight that Dad came home.*

IT WAS NOT UNTIL + SUBJECT¹ + VERB¹ + THAT + SUBJECT² + VERB²

Until is the conjunction of time in this structure.

e.g. *It was not until Dad came home that I went to bed.*

DÁP ÁN

1. It was not until the 1950s that rock-'n'-roll appeared.
2. I. Papa, it was not until their mother had passed away that the children came to actually understand their father's love for her.
3. It was not until Elvis Presley had left the army that his popularity really came to its height.
4. It was not until the 1930s that the electric guitar was developed for popular music.
5. It was not until their performance on the Ed Sullivan Show that the Beatles started to be internationally known.
6. It was not until the homecoming last year that he had a chance to visit his beloved Phan Boi Chau High School.

BÀI TẬP Củng Cố 12

A. PHONETICS

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in the same line.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. A. <u>m</u> usic | B. instr <u>u</u> ment | C. <u>h</u> uman | D. <u>f</u> uture |
| 2. A. <u>f</u> olk | B. r <u>o</u> ll | C. <u>o</u> rally | D. kn <u>o</u> wn |
| 3. A. <u>e</u> xample | B. m <u>u</u> sic | C. v <u>e</u> rsion | D. <u>e</u> asy |
| 4. A. <u>l</u> earned | B. lov <u>e</u> d | C. play <u>e</u> d | D. appear <u>e</u> d |
| 5. A. <u>r</u> ural | B. pop <u>u</u> lar | C. stim <u>u</u> lation | D. <u>t</u> une |

II. Choose the word whose stress pattern is different from the rest in each group.

- | | | | |
|---------------------|------------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 6. A. traditional | B. remember | C. romantic | D. instrument |
| 7. A. dependent | B. indispensable | C. emotional | D. appeal |
| 8. A. transmitted | B. composer | C. different | D. variety |
| 9. A. audience | B. emerging | C. performance | D. arrangement |
| 10. A. nonclassical | B. generation | C. stimulation | D. satisfaction |

B. USE OF LANGUAGE.

Choose the word or phrase (A, B, C or D) that best fits the blank space in each sentence.

11. A good dictionary is _____ for learning a foreign language.
A. expensive B. indispensable C. asked D. easy
12. We met at six, as _____.
A. arrangement B. arrangement C. arranged D. arranging
13. What musical _____ can your father play? ~ The saxophone.
A. tool B. utensil C. device D. instrument

14. What type of music we like is a matter of personal _____.
 A. prefer B. preference C. preferential D. preferring
15. Mr. Long is a _____ teacher.
 A. learning B. learned C. learnt D. well-learned
16. Huế's Festival 2008 was televised in front of a live _____.
 A. audience B. attendance C. viewer D. spectator
17. Why don't you ever give her flowers? I wish you'd be more _____.
 A. lyrical B. lovely C. romantic D. classical
18. The decision was based on _____ rather than rational thought.
 A. affection B. reason C. emotion D. stimulation
19. My father's book has _____ me to study the subject in more depth.
 A. stimulated B. promoted C. raised D. excited
20. Mozart _____ his last opera shortly before he died.
 A. composer B. composition C. composers D. composed
21. The library contains many popular works of.....
 A. reference B. refer C. referring D. inference
22. He **emerged** as a key figure in the campaign. _____ is a synonym of **emerged**.
 A. came B. happened
 C. became known D. appeared
23. There is a wide _____ of patterns to choose from.
 A. various B. varied C. variable D. variety
24. Their diet consisted largelyvegetables.
 A. in B. of C. with D. from
25. My family have lived in this house for _____.
 A. long B. ages C. generations D. ever
26. The air was with the perfume Mum is wearing.
 A. full B. sweet C. fresh D. pleased
27. We need to out corruption at all levels.
 A. look B. find C. pick D. root
28. She's never _____ with what she's got.
 A. satisfaction B. satisfied C. satisfying D. satisfactory
29. The Third Congress Meeting was _____ live by satellite to all over the country.
 A. transmitting B. transmission C. transmitted D. transmit
30. The Huong Pagoda Festival is _____ held in January.
 A. traditionally B. generally C. traditional D. general

C. READING. Read the following passage then choose the correct item (A, B, C, or D) that best fits each blank.

John Winston Lennon was born on October 9, 1940, in the Liverpool Maternity Hospital, Oxford Street, Liverpool, to Julia Stanley Lennon and Alfred Lennon, during the course of a German air raid in World War II. He was named (31)..... his paternal grandfather, John 'Jack' Lennon, and Winston Churchill.

Throughout the rest of his (32) _____ and adolescence, Lennon lived with his Aunt Mimi and her husband George Smith, who had no children of their own, in a middle class area of Liverpool. Mimi bought volumes of short stories for Lennon, and George, who was a dairyman at his family's farm, engaged Lennon in (33) _____ crossword puzzles, and bought him a harmonica, and when Lennon was 11 he often visited her at 1 Blomfield Road, Liverpool. Julia taught Lennon (34) _____ play the banjo, and played Elvis Presley's records to him. The first song he learned was Fats Domino's "Ain't That A Shame".

Lennon attended Dovedale County Primary School (35) _____ he passed his Eleven-Plus exam. From September 1952 to 1957, he attended the Quarry Bank High School in Liverpool, where he was known as a "happy-go-lucky" pupil, drawing comical cartoons and making (36) _____ of his teachers by mimicking their odd characteristics.

Julia bought Lennon his first guitar in 1957 often telling him, "The guitar's all very well, John, but you'll never make a living out of it."

When Lennon was 17, Julia was killed by a car driven by a police officer. Her death was a bond (37) _____ Lennon and Paul McCartney, who also had lost his own mother on 31 October 1956. Lennon and McCartney began writing songs together. The first song Lennon completed was "Hello, Little Girl" when he was 18 years old, (38) _____ later became a hit for the Fourmost. George Harrison joined the band as lead guitarist, and Stuart Sutcliffe - Lennon's art school friend - later joined as bassist. After a series of name changes, the group decided (39) _____ The Beatles. Lennon was always considered the leader of the group, as McCartney explained: "We all (40) _____ up to John. He was older and he was very much the leader - he was the quickest wit and the smartest and all that kind of thing."

- | | | | |
|----------------------|---------------|--------------|--------------|
| 31. A. for | B. after | C. to | D. along |
| 32. A. neighbourhood | B. kinderhood | C. childhood | D. youngster |
| 33. A. solving | B. doing | C. settling | D. finding |
| 34. A. what to | B. when to | C. where to | D. how to |
| 35. A. while | B. until | C. when | D. after |
| 36. A. use | B. a fuss | C. fun | D. allowance |
| 37. A. among | B. between | C. with | D. through |

38. A. which B. that C. who D. when
 39. A. to B. for C. with D. on
 40. A. ran B. looked C. waited D. stood

D. WRITING. Use these cues and write a profile of Bob Dylan:

1. Bob Dylan (Robert Zimmerman Dylan), born in 1941, one of / most important figures / contemporary folk music and rock music.
 2. Dylan's songs of social protest / as / "Blowin' in the Wind" (1962) / became associated / civil rights movement / United States.
 3. He / grew up / mining community of Hibbing, Minnesota, / learning / play / guitar / harmonica / his teens.
 4. began / performing career / campus coffeehouses, / taking / stage name / Dylan Thomas / Welsh poet.
 5. Dylan's performance / followed / tradition / folk singers / with / guitar- and harmonica-based songs / about / poor and downtrodden / has won / many Grammy Awards
- . *Guy is interviewing a guest on his chat show. It's the actress Melissa Livingstone, who is in the TV soap opera 'Round the Corner'. Put in Guy's questions.*

Guy: How often do you record *'Round the Corner'*?

Melissa: Oh, we record it every day. It's a full-time job, you know.

Guy: Andit? (46)

Melissa: In Birmingham, at the BBC studios.

Guy: (47)

Melissa: How many? Well, let me see, I think we've done a thousand programmes.

Guy: (48)

Melissa: I'm not going to tell you. How much money I earn is my business.

Guy: OK, I'm sorry. (49)

Melissa: Oh, a long time ago. I started acting when I was twelve.

Guy: (50)

Melissa: My plans for the future? I just want to go on with *'Round the Corner'*.

DÁP ÁN

A. PHONETICS

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. B | 2. C | 3. C | 4. A | 5. A |
| I. | | | | |
| 6. D | 7. B | 8. C | 9. A | 10. B |

B. USE OF LANGUAGE

- | | | | | |
|-------|--------|-------|-------|-------|
| 11. B | 12. C | 13. D | 14. B | 15. B |
| 16. A | 17. C. | 18.C | 19.A | 20.D |
| 21.A | 22.C | 23.D | 24.B | 25. C |
| 26. B | 27. D | 28. B | 29. C | 30. A |

C. READING

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 31. B | 32. C | 33. A | 34. D | 35. B |
| 36. C | 37. B | 38. A | 39. D | 40. B |

D. WRITING

I.

41. Bob Dylan (Robert Zimmerman Dylan), born in 1941, is one of the most important figures of the contemporary folk music and rock music.
42. Dylan's songs of social protest such as "Blowin' in the Wind" (1962) became associated with the civil rights movement in the United States.
43. He grew up in the mining community of Hibbing, Minnesota, learning to play the guitar and harmonica in his teens.
44. He began his performing career in campus coffeehouses, taking his stage name after Dylan Thomas, the Welsh poet.
45. Dylan's performance followed the tradition of folk singers with his guitar and harmonica-based songs about the poor and downtrodden and has won many Grammy Awards.

II.

46. where do you record (it)?
47. How many programmes have you done?
48. How much money do you earn?
49. When did you start acting?
50. What are your plans for the future?

CONSOLIDATION 3

(From Unit 8-12)

LISTENING COMPREHENSION

a. You will hear a talk about the Amazone rain forest. After you hear the talk, read the questions and four possible answers to each question. The check (✓) the best answer.

ANSWERS

1. A 2. B 3. A 4. D 5. A

b. You will hear short conversations between two people. After each conversation, you will hear a question about it. After you hear the talk, read the questions and four possible answers to each question. Then check (✓) the best answer.

ANSWERS

1. B 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. B

VOCABULARY

a) Write in each blank the correct form of the word in parentheses.

Example: dispose ⇒ **disposable**

ĐÁP ÁN

1. poison ⇒ **poisonous** 2. poach ⇒ **poached**
3. inhabit ⇒ **habitat** 4. cautious ⇒ **caution** - danger ⇒ **dangerous**
5. danger ⇒ **endangered** 6. humour ⇒ **humourous**
7. popular ⇒ **popularity** 8. tradition ⇒ **traditional**
9. transmit ⇒ **transmission** 10. recite ⇒ **recital**

b) Choose the words or phrases from the box to complete the following sentences or exchanges.

ĐÁP ÁN

1. **active** 12. **destruction**
13. **reservation** 14. **ecology** 15. **nonprofit**

c) Choose the word or phrase that best completes each sentence or exchange.

ĐÁP ÁN

16. D 17. A 18. B 19. A 20. B

GRAMMAR AND STRUCTURE

a) Write the correct form of the verb in parentheses.

ĐÁP ÁN

1. **are not allowed**
2. **Did ... export - were exported**

3. are released

4. living

5. should be done - should not dump

b) Put a suitable relative pronoun in each blank in this news report about hurricane.

ĐÁP ÁN

(6) which /that (7) which (8) who (9) which / that (10) who

c) Choose the word or phrase that best completes each sentence or exchange.

ĐÁP ÁN

11. B.

12. D.

13. D.

14. C.

15. D.

16. A.

17. D.

18. C.

19. B.

20. D.

READING

BÀI DỊCH GỢI Ý

ÂM NHẠC TRONG ĐỜI SỐNG CHÚNG TA

Âm nhạc đóng một vai trò quan trọng trong cuộc sống hàng ngày của chúng ta. Không thể có một ngày trôi qua mà không có âm nhạc. Âm nhạc phục vụ nhiều chức năng trong xã hội chúng ta: nó được dùng để giải trí, thư giãn, kích thích, thuyết phục, dạy học, chữa bệnh, đoàn kết, nâng cao lòng yêu nước, v.v.

Các nhà quảng cáo ý thức rất rõ rằng âm nhạc đóng vai trò như thế nào trong khi đi vào tâm trí của người tiêu dùng. Ví dụ, cách có hiệu quả nhất để thêm vào trí nhớ của người tiêu dùng là đem theo một mục quảng cáo với một bản nhạc hay. Một khi người tiêu dùng thích bản nhạc đó, anh ta có thể sẽ nhớ tên thương hiệu của sản phẩm được quảng cáo cũng như anh ta sẽ chọn sản phẩm đó khi đứng trước một kệ đầy hàng hóa có nhiều thương hiệu khác nhau.

Âm nhạc trong những dịp đặc biệt nào đó thật cần thiết. Ở các tiết mục thi đấu Olympic, thật thú vị khi quan sát thấy âm nhạc được trình diễn ra sao. Việc giải trí là một chức năng dễ nhìn thấy, nhưng hơn thế nữa, âm nhạc tạo ra những sự kiện như thế sẽ tạo ra một bầu không khí hào hứng. Việc dùng các bài quốc ca là để nâng cao tình cảm của lòng yêu nước, và nhờ thế, cổ vũ các vận động viên nỗ lực nhiều hơn.

Âm nhạc còn có thể được sử dụng làm phương tiện chữa bệnh cho bệnh nhân. Nó làm dịu thần kinh của bệnh nhân bị rối loạn tinh thần. Với những bệnh nhân bị khiếm thị, chơi nhạc là một phương pháp giúp họ mở rộng tâm hồn với thế giới bên ngoài. Thật hiển nhiên, âm nhạc có một tác động sâu sắc và mạnh mẽ lên cuộc sống của chúng ta.

Chú Thích Từ Ngữ

patriotism: lòng yêu nước - function: tác dụng; chức năng - effective: có hiệu quả - advertisement: việc quảng cáo - brand: thương hiệu - essential: thiết yếu; thiết yếu - obvious: rõ ràng - atmosphere: bầu không khí - anthem: quốc

encouraging: có tính chất động viên, cổ vũ – patient: bệnh nhân – disorder: sự rối loạn – impact: sự tác động – profound: thâm sâu; sâu sắc

ĐÁP ÁN

- a) 1. NI 2. T 3. NI 4. F 5. F

b) Find the words or phrases from the passage that mean the same as those below.

ĐÁP ÁN

6. to promote 7. patriotism 8. to be fully aware of
9. impact 10. to soothe

WRITING

Write About Yourself

ĐÁP ÁN GỢI Ý

1. My name is Lâm. I was born on June 20th, 1987. I started going to school in Mê Linh Elementary School. Now I am in grade 10 A-12, Yên Thao High School. I live here with my parents, my grandparents and my two sisters. My father is a doctor, and my mother is a teacher.

In my free time, I like listening to music and reading. I like Tết, when I have more free time to go out to see sights and take photographs.

I am interested in learning English and literature. So I am going to be a teacher as my mother. I have written some short stories and poems. They were printed in the local newspapers. Do you think I will become a writer?

2. My name is Mai. I was born on July 12th, 1988. Now I am a student in Viet Duc high school. I live in Hanoi with my parents, my grandmother and my brother. In my free time, I like reading books, listening to Pop music and chatting with friends. I am quite talkative and I think I can become a diplomat who can go round the world and talk to people every where. My favourite holiday is Halloween. My friends and I always held custom parties on that occasion. We also make pumpkin lantern and cheese candies. That's a great fun!

Unit 13

THEATRE AND MOVIES

READING

Before You Read

a) Work with a partner to put the names of the people in the pictures into two groups.

Đáp án

Playwrights	Actors / Actresses
a. Shakespeare	b. Charlie Chaplin
b. Charlie Chaplin	c. J.B.P. Moliere
c. J.B.P. Moliere	d. Audrey Hepburn
e. Bernard Shaw	f. Tom Hanks

b) List several well-known works written by one of the playwrights above.

Đáp án gợi ý

Playwright	Works
Shakespeare	<i>Hamlet</i> <i>Macbeth</i> <i>Romeo and Juliet</i>
Charlie Chaplin	<i>City Lights (1931)</i> <i>Modern Times (1936)</i> <i>Limelight (1952)</i>
J.B.P. Moliere	<i>Le Bourgeois Gentilhomme(The Bourgeois Gentleman)</i> <i>L'Avare (The Miser)</i>
George Bernard Shaw	<i>Fanny's First Play (1911)</i> <i>Pygmalion(1912)</i>

Reading Text

Bài dịch gợi ý

SỨC HẤP DẪN CỦA SÂN KHẤU

Kịch nghệ hấp dẫn vì nhiều nguyên nhân. Chúng ta sẽ bàn đến 4 nguyên nhân.

Đầu tiên, kịch nghệ là một hình thức kể chuyện hiệu quả. Từ thời xa xưa, người ta ngồi quanh đống lửa giải trí bằng cách nghe kể chuyện về những kỳ tích và chiến công vẻ vang của các vị anh hùng. Tương tự như thế, ở rạp hát chúng ta thưởng thức một cuộc tranh tài kịch tính giữa hai phái đối nghịch. Chúng ta bị lôi cuốn vào nhân vật trong truyện và quan tâm đến phần chung cuộc.

Thứ nhì, khán giả cảm thấy thích thú với kỹ năng dàn dựng – nghệ thuật sáng tạo một tác phẩm nghệ thuật. Những người đi xem kịch thích thú với công

hành của các nghệ sĩ và kỹ thuật viên. Họ có thể trầm trở phong cách vẽ của vị họa sĩ, cách nhạc sĩ xử lý một giọng ca hay nhạc cụ, cách diễn viên múa làm hủ sần múa, và hơn cả là cách đạo diễn sáng tạo khai thác các góc cạnh của ở kịch.

Sự hài lòng thứ ba là chúng ta có cơ hội có được những tầm nhìn mới mẻ. Aristotle – một nhà tư tưởng người Hy Lạp Cổ xưa – gợi ý rằng niềm vui lớn nhất của nhân loại nằm trong học tập. Kịch nghệ là cách tốt nhất để chúng ta trải rộng tầm nhìn vượt khỏi vòng chật hẹp của cuộc sống hàng ngày. Nó giúp ta biết đến những con người và nền văn hóa xa lạ. Từ đó, kịch nghệ mang lại nhiều cơ hội phi thường để ta có những trải nghiệm sâu sắc hơn.

Cuối cùng thì kinh nghiệm có được từ các vở kịch cũng có thể là một trải nghiệm tinh thần. Cũng theo gợi ý của Aristotle thì hài kịch có lẽ cho ta thấy mình tồi tệ hơn là mình tưởng, còn bi kịch thì lại cho ta thấy mình thật sự hạnh phúc hơn.

Những vở kịch tuyệt tác có những nhân vật vĩ đại khai thác những vấn đề lớn. Ở đó, con người chịu thử thách, và có thể là tan nát thể xác, nhưng sức mạnh tinh thần luôn chiến thắng.

) Comprehension questions.

Đáp án gợi ý

- . The causes of the appeal of the theater are:
 - It offers an effective means of telling a story
 - The audience finds pleasure in the skill of execution – the art of creating a work of art
 - It offers an opportunity for us to gain fresh perceptions
 - It can give us spiritual experience.
- . Yes, they did. They enjoyed sitting around the fire and being entertained with stories of heroes' wonderful actions and victories.
- . Aristotle thought the greatest pleasure of human beings was in learning.
- . Theater gets us acquainted with people and cultures quite foreign to us.
- . Theaters may be amazed at the painter's brushwork, the musician's control of a voice or instrument, the dancer's use of space, and the director's management of the creative aspects of the play.
- . Tragedy shows us to be better than we are, but comedy shows us to be worse.

) Vocabulary. Choose the best meaning(s):

Đáp án

sources	B. causes
entertained	A. Amused
work	D. production

4	aspects	A. parts D. sides
5	extraordinary	C. great
6	characters	C. persons/ animals in a play
7	dramatic	D. connected with the play

c) Fill in the blanks with information from the passage.

Đáp án

- | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Four. | 4. Ancient Greece |
| 2. the dramatic contest | 5. humans |
| 3. creating a work of art | 6. the author and readers |

d) Tell your partner about the best play you have seen recently.

Đáp án gợi ý

I've never been to the theatre. I rarely watch plays on television. I've heard about some well-known plays such as: *Dạ cổ hoài lang* and *Lôi vũ* (Thunderstorm). I hope to have more free time so that I can watch the plays on TV, and have a opportunity to enjoy plays at the theatre. It'll be great.

LISTENING

a) Work in pairs to discuss the following questions

Đáp án gợi ý

- I think that theatre and the motion picture have a promising future. It seems that they are regaining their appeal. For the last decades, people preferred staying at home watching television or video compact discs.
- The theatre was born earlier. The history of the motion picture has been more than a century.

b) Listen to this passage about American motion picture and check (✓) the time expressions mentioned.

Đáp án

1. 1861	☒	2. 1903	☒	3. 1915	☒	4. 1920	☐
5. 1927	☒	6. 1933	☒	7. 1935	☒	8. 1945	☐
9. 1950	☐	10. 1960s	☒	11. 1970s	☒	12. 1980s	☐

c) Complete the sentences with the correct movie titles.

Đáp án

- A. The first major American movie was *'The Great Train Robbery'*.
- B. *'The Birth of a nation'* was a movie about the Civil War by D.W. Griffith
- C. Warner Brothers released *'The Jazz Singer'*, its first talking picture, in the late 1920s.
- A. The three-color system was first used in the 1935 in the movie *Becky Sharp*.

d) The following statements can be true (T) or false (F). Correct the false statements.

Đáp án

1. T The history of the American movie industry is now more than a century long.
2. F → Edwin S. Porter produced the first major American movie in 1903.
3. T *The Birth of a Nation* marked the growth of American motion picture.
4. T The first three-color movie had been made by 1933.
5. T Movies produced before 1926 were all silent.
6. F → It took American motion pictures two decades, 1960s and 1970s.
7. T Woody Allen and Steven Spielberg are excellent moviemakers.
8. T The two decades 1960s and 1970s are landmarks of the American movie history.

e) Fill in the gaps with the correct words.

Đáp án Đáp án gợi ý

1. images 2. 1903 3. spoken 4. gifted 5. studios

f) List several movies that you love or have watched recently.

Đáp án gợi ý

The Rebel, starring Ngô Thanh Vân and Johnny Trí Nguyễn.

Hà Đông Silk Dress, starring Trương Ngọc Anh and Quốc Khánh.

SPEAKING

Expressing Preferences

a) In pairs, ask and answer the following questions.

Đáp án gợi ý

A Do you like watching movies?

B Yes, I do.

A How often do you go to the movies?

B Twice a month.

A What type(s) of movies do you prefer to watch, action or love films?

B I prefer to watch action films.

b) Work in pairs to express your movie preferences. The prompts in the box will help you.

Đáp án gợi ý

Quyên What's your favorite movie, Hoàng?

Hoàng I like action films best. They are thrilling and easy to understand.

Quyên Oh, don't you think there's too much violence in it?

Hoàng Not all of them. Some are quite OK, I think. What about you?

Quyên I prefer love movies. They reflect many aspects of life and are touching. The actresses are beautiful, and the scenery picturesque.

Hoàng Maybe most girls like love films!

A: What types of movies do you prefer to watch?

B: I prefer to watch cartoons. How about you?

A: I like action movies better than cartoons because action movies are easy to understand. They also provide real entertainment: very thrilling, energizing. I think cartoons are suitable for children only and not interesting for high school students.

B: But I find cartoons interesting. I enjoy watching them because they help me imagine about the world and remember moral lessons.

WRITING

Useful language: describing a film

- It was directed / written by ...
- It won ... (Oscar/ The Golden Kite/ etc...)
- It is set in ...
- It is based on the book ...
- The story is about/ the film follows ...
- It stars ...
- My favorite scene is ...

a) Tell about the movie you love the most

Đáp án gợi ý

Several months ago, I saw *'The Rebel'*. The film was directed by Charlie Nguyen and released in April 2007. It is the best Vietnamese action film I have ever seen. It is set in Vietnam in the 1920s., under colonial French ruling. As anti-French rebellions emerge all over the country to disrupt the foreign occupiers, many Vietnamese agents are employed to track and destroy these rebels. The film follows the journey of Le van Cuong, a Vietnamese agent, who encounters Vo Thanh Thuy, a courageous revolutionary fighter and the daughter of the rebel leader. Cuong's superior plans for him to use Thuy as a means to get to her father, but Cuong soon has feelings for her and is awakened to his Vietnamese ancestral origin. He then turns against the French colonialists. I like *'The Rebel'* for its attractive, talented actors and actresses, and for its sensible ending in which patriotism and love prevail.

Chú thích từ ngữ:

Rebellion: *cuộc nổi dậy*

Patriotism: *lòng yêu nước*

Revolutionary fighter: *chiến sĩ cách mạng*

Ancestral origin: *cội nguồn*

Colonialist: thực dân
Prevail: thắng thế

c) Write a paragraph about the movie *Rain Man* basing on the given outline

Đáp án gợi ý

1. *Rain Man* was directed by Barry Levinson and released in 1988. The film won four Oscars for: Best Picture, Best Actor, and Best Director. It was widely loved and listed among 'All-Time Top 50 American Movies Through 1995'. The film is about the relationship between two brothers. It stars Dustin Hoffman, who plays the part of the elder brother, Raymond. Charlie, the younger brother, neither loves nor respects Raymond, who suffers from serious mental condition and is unable to communicate properly. Hopefully, Raymond's innocence and seemingly stupid behavior have gradually transformed Charlie, who eventually realizes that his sibling is irreplaceable. *Rain Man* points out that brotherhood is invaluable and the good is always there in humans' hearts.
2. *Rain Man*, directed by Barry Levinson, released in 1988, is a feature movie that won several Oscars including Best Picture, Best Actor, and Best Director. This movie tells about the relationship between two brothers. The younger brother Charlie does not really love or respect his older brother Raymond, played by Dustin Hoffman, who suffers from serious mental condition and is unable to communicate properly. Throughout their journey together, however, Raymond's innocence and seemingly stupid behavior have gradually transformed his brother. Charlie eventually comes to realize that brotherhood is invaluable and Raymond, no matter how abnormal, is his irreplaceable sibling. *Rain Man* was widely loved (listed among All-Time Top 50 American Movies Through 1995) because it restated reasonably and movingly that the good is always there in humans' hearts.

Chú thích từ ngữ:

Sibling: anh / chị em ruột thịt.

LANGUAGE FOCUS

Word study

Adjectives of Attitudes

Use the words given in parentheses to form appropriate adjectives to fill in the gaps.

- | | | |
|----------------|-----------------|------------------------------|
| 2. frightening | 6. wonderful | 10. interesting; interested |
| 3. excited | 7. breathtaking | 11. delightful |
| 4. annoyed | 8. impressive | 12. appreciative; invaluable |
| 5. dramatic | 9. original | |

Grammar

Articles *a/ an/ the*

Use a/ an with singular countable nouns

- | | |
|--|--|
| ○ the first time you mention a thing/ person | I saw <u>an</u> old man with <u>a</u> dog. |
| ○ when you say what something is | It's <u>a</u> nice house |
| ○ when you say what somebody does. | She's <u>a</u> lawyer. |
| ○ in exclamations with What! | What <u>an</u> awful day! |
| ○ in expressions like... | three times <u>a</u> week. |

Use the

- | | |
|--|---|
| ○ when we talk about something we've already mentioned | I saw an old man with a dog, <u>an the</u> dog was barking. |
| ○ when there's only one of something | <u>The moon</u> goes around <u>the sun</u> . |
| ○ when it's clear what you're referring to | He opened <u>the</u> door. |
| ○ with places in a town, e.g. cinema, theatre | I'm going to <u>the cinema</u> . |
| ○ with superlatives | It's <u>the best</u> restaurant in town. |

Don't use the

- | | |
|---|--|
| ○ when you are speaking in general
(with plural and uncountable nouns) | <u>Women</u> are more careful than <u>men</u>
<u>Love</u> is more important than <u>money</u> |
| ○ with some nouns (e.g. <i>home, work, school, church</i>) after <i>at/ to/ from</i> . | She's not <u>at home</u> today
I get back <u>from work</u> at 5.30 p.m. |
| ○ before meals, days and months | I have <u>breakfast</u> late on <u>Sunday</u> . |
| ○ before <i>next/ last + days, week...</i> | See you <u>next weekend</u> . |

Fill in the gaps with a(n), the, or zero article.

- | | | |
|--------|---------------|---------------|
| 2. the | 5. the | 8. the |
| 3. A | 6. a | 9. no article |
| 4. the | 7. no article | 10. the |

BÀI TẬP Củng Cố

UNIT 13

A. PHONETICS

. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in the same line.

- | | | | |
|----------------------|-------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| . A. <u>a</u> spect | B. <u>a</u> mazed | C. <u>a</u> ppeal | D. <u>a</u> cquainted |
| . A. <u>co</u> ntest | B. bro <u>ke</u> n | C. bo <u>dy</u> | D. <u>co</u> medy |
| . A. <u>sk</u> ill | B. sp <u>ir</u> it | C. victo <u>r</u> y | D. man <u>ki</u> nd |
| . A. test <u>e</u> d | B. entertain <u>e</u> d | C. enjoy <u>e</u> d | D. gain <u>e</u> d |
| . A. show <u>s</u> | B. human <u>s</u> | C. source <u>s</u> | D. culture <u>s</u> |

I. Choose the word whose stress pattern is different from the rest in each group.

- | | | | |
|------------------|----------------|--------------|---------------|
| . A. brushwork | B. feature | C. drama | D. appeal |
| . A. concern | B. involve | C. offer | D. explore |
| . A. physical | B. dramatic | C. wonderful | D. opposite |
| . A. tragedy | B. character | C. audience | D. suggestion |
| 0. A. instrument | B. instruction | C. director | D. perception |

B. GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY

. Fill in each blank with the proper form of the word in parentheses

1. The child was _____ by the violent thunderstorm.
(fright)
2. She shows little or no _____ of pop music.
(appreciate)
3. Bao Dai, the last ruler of the Nguyen Dynasty, was _____ in 1926.
(throne)
4. Don't believe everything she tells you; she tends to _____.
(dramatic)
5. My sister is a sales _____ in a computer company.
(execution)
6. The number of _____ is decreasing. Fewer people go to theatres now. (theatre)
7. "It's been a great _____ meeting you."
(please)
8. Computer is an invention that greatly benefits _____.
(man)

II. Circle the correct answers

19. Did you lock *door* / *the door* when you left *a house* / *the house*?
20. Her sister is married to *Taiwanese* / *a Taiwanese*. He's *businessman* / *a businessma*
21. We go to *theatre* / *the theatre* about once *a month* / *the month*.
22. Did you see *news* / *the news* on TV last night?
23. I love *classical music* / *the classical music*.
24. Who is *a girl* / *the girl* by *the window* / *a window*?
25. I leave *home* / *the home* at 7.00 and get to *work* / *the work* at 8.00
26. *Men* / *The men* aren't as sensitive as *women* / *the women*.
27. We usually have *dinner* / *the dinner* at 8.00 and go to *bed* / *the bed* at 11.00 p.m
28. She has *the lovely face* / *a lovely face*.

C. READING COMPREHENSION

Read the following passage and do the tasks that appear below it.

GRAUMAN'S CHINESE THEATRE

Every year, more than two million people visit Grauman's Chinese Theatre in Hollywood. The theater looks like a **giant** red pagoda, and there is a huge **dragon** in the front. It was built in 1927 by Sid Grauman, and it first show was the **premiere**, or first showing, of the silent film *King of Kings*. Since then, the Chinese Theatre has had more movie premieres than any other theatre.

However, most people go to Grauman's Chinese Theatre not to see a movie, but to look at the sidewalk. There in the cement are the footprints, handprints and **autographs** of more than 200 movie stars. These include stars from the past such as Marilyn Monroe, Elizabeth Taylor, Clark Gable, and John Wayne. In recent years, popular performers as Meryl Strypp, Tom Hanks, Harrison Ford and Tom Cruise put their **imprints** on the wet **cement** too. Some stars left the imprints of their cigar, noses, **braids** or legs, and cowboy actor Roy Roger horse Trigger even left his hoof prints. Every movie lover who visits Hollywood should not miss Grauman's Chinese Theatre.

a) Vocabulary: Match each word in Column A with its equivalent in Column B

Column A	Column B
29. giant ...	a. first public showing of a film
30. dragon ...	b. hair plaited to make it rope-like.
31. premiere ...	c. very large, enormous
32. autograph ...	d. grey powder made from lime and clay used in construction
33. imprints ...	e. imaginary animal with wings and claws
34. cement ...	f. person's signature or handwriting
35. braids ...	g. mark made by pressing or stamping a surface

b) Give short answer to the following questions:

36. Where is Grauman's Chinese Theatre located?

37. How many tourists visit Grauman's Chinese Theatre every year?

38. What is Grauman's Chinese Theatre famous for?

39. What kinds of imprints can you find in the sidewalk of Grauman Theatre?

40. Whose imprints are they?

D. WRITING

Use the following clues to write a paragraph about the movie *Cinema Paradiso*

Film: *Cinema Paradiso*

Film director: Giuseppe Tornatore

Movie stars: Philippe Noiret: Alfredo; Savaltore Cascio: little boy.

Award: Oscar, 1989, Best Foreign Language

Setting: an Italian village in the 1940s and 50s.

Plot/ Story: - Only one cinema in the village: Cinema Paradiso.

Alfredo, the man who shows the films.

Little Savaltore is crazy for films, begs to work as Alfredo's assistant.

Teen-ager Savaltore leaves the village and becomes a famous film director.

Thirty years later, Savaltore returns home, but Alfredo has passed away.

DÁP ÁN

UNIT 13

A. PHONETICS

- | | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------|--|
| 1. A. <u>a</u> spect | 2. B. br <u>o</u> ken | 3.D. man <u>k</u> ind |
| 4. A. test <u>e</u> d | 5.C. sourc <u>e</u> s | 6. D. appeal |
| 7. C. offer | 8.B. dram <u>a</u> tic | 9.D.sugg <u>e</u> stion 10. A. instrum <u>e</u> nt |

B. GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY

- | | | |
|---|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 11. frigh <u>t</u> ened | 12. Appre <u>c</u> iation | 13. Enthron <u>e</u> d |
| 14. Dramatiz <u>e</u> | 15. execut <u>i</u> ve | 16. theatr <u>e</u> -goers |
| 17. Pleasur <u>e</u> | 18. man <u>k</u> ind/ humankind | |
| 19. Did you lock <i>the door</i> when you left <i>the house</i> ? | | |

20. Her sister is married to a *Taiwanese*. He's a *businessman*.
21. We go to *the theatre* about once a *month*.
22. Did you see *the news* on TV last night?
23. I love *classical music*.
24. Who is *the girl by the window*?
25. I leave *home* at 7.00 and get to *work* at 8.00
26. *Men* aren't as sensitive as *women*.
27. We usually have *dinner* at 8.00 and go to *bed* at 11.00 p.m.
28. She has a *lovely face*.

C. READING COMPREHENSION

29. giant ... c. very large, enormous
30. dragon ... e. imaginary animal with wings and claws
31. premiere ... a. first public showing of a film
32. autograph ... f. person's signature or handwriting
33. imprints ... g. mark made by pressing or stamping a surface
34. cement ... d. grey powder made from lime and clay used in construction
35. braids ... b. hair plaited to make it rope-like.
36. in Hollywood, U.S.A
37. More than two million people.
38. There are more than 200 movie stars' imprints and autographs on the sidewalk to the theatre.
39. Footprints, handprints, hoof prints, prints of noses, legs, cigars, braids.
40. The footprints, handprints, prints of noses, legs, cigars and braids were left by famous movie stars. The hoof prints are those of Trigger, cowboy actor Roy Rogers' horse.

D. WRITING

Đáp án gợi ý:

Cinema Paradiso was directed by Guiseppe Tornatore. The film won an Oscar in 1989 for Best Foreign Language Film.

The film stars Philippe Noiret as Alfred, and Salvatore Cascio, who plays the part of the boy.

It is set in an Italian village in the 1940s and 50s.

It is about a little boy named Salvatore who is crazy for films and spends most of his time at *Cinema Paradiso*, the only theatre in the village. He becomes a 'close friend' of Alfredo, the man who shows the films, and later he works as Alfredo's assistant. When he is a teenager, he leaves the village and goes to work in Rome, and eventually becomes a famous film director. Unfortunately, when he returns home thirty years later, Alfredo has passed

away. He never sees his 'old friend' again. The film is very touching; it makes many viewers cry.

Chú thích từ ngữ:

To pass away: *qua đời*

Unit 14

THE WORLD CUP

. READING

Before You Read

a. Describe what you see in the picture below. Name one of the players.

Đáp án:

A soccer game.

Pelé, the Brazilian forward.

b. Work in groups to ask your partners the following questions to see how much they know about soccer and the World Cup.

Đáp án:

Every four years.

The Fédération Internationale de Football Association.

In 1930, in Uruguay.

Pelé, the Brazilian forward.

The Men's World Cup in 2002, the Women's World Cup in 1991.

Yes.

Leading Text

Bài dịch gợi ý:

Cúp Bóng Đá Thế Giới

Bóng đá là môn thể thao được yêu chuộng nhất thế giới. Giải cao nhất trong các cuộc tranh tài bóng đá là giải tranh cúp thế giới, được tổ chức mỗi bốn năm một lần. Có vòng thi đấu giành cho nữ và có vòng thi đấu cho nam. Hơn một tỉ người khắp trên thế giới theo dõi cúp bóng đá thế giới trên ti vi.

Liên Đoàn Bóng Đá Thế Giới (FIFA) được sáng lập năm 1904. Vào năm 1930 giải tranh cúp vô địch bóng đá thế giới đầu tiên được tổ chức ở Uruguay với chỉ 3 đội. Bây giờ 200 đội ban của 200 quốc gia tham dự vào vòng đấu loại trong khu vực của họ trước khi được chọn là một trong 32 quốc gia tranh tài trong vòng chung kết.

Chiếc cúp vô địch bóng đá thế giới gốc đã được trao vĩnh viễn cho Brazil tại Mexico năm 1970 để tôn vinh thành tích ba lần đoạt chức vô địch cúp bóng đá thế giới của họ.

Nhiều người hâm mộ bóng đá đã cho rằng Pelé, một cầu thủ người Brazil chơi ở vị trí tiền đạo, là cầu thủ xuất sắc nhất của mọi thời. Ông ấy đã nổi danh vì tài khống chế bóng đáng kinh ngạc và những cú sút mạnh. Vào năm 1986, Mexico là quốc gia đầu tiên đăng cai tổ chức vòng chung kết bóng đá thế giới hai lần. Năm 2002, Giải vô địch bóng đá thế giới lần đầu tiên diễn ra tại châu Á do hai nước Nhật Bản và Hàn Quốc đồng tổ chức.

Giải vô địch bóng đá thế giới nữ diễn ra lần đầu tiên tại Trung Quốc năm 1991 và đã tạo được tiếng vang đều đặn từ đó đến nay. Trung Quốc đã được chọn là nước chủ nhà đăng cai giải nhưng rồi những cuộc thi đấu phải dời đến Mỹ vì sự xuất hiện một hội chứng hô hấp cấp nặng (SARS) tại Trung Quốc gây hậu quả nghiêm trọng cho sức khỏe. Gần 100 quốc gia đã cố gắng tranh tài tại lần tranh giải năm cúp bóng đá thế giới năm 2003.

Read the text and do the tasks that follow.

a. The following statements can be true (T) or false (F). Check (✓) the appropriate boxes. Then correct the false statements.

Đáp án:

- | | | | |
|-----------------|-------------|------|------|
| 1. F (13 teams) | 2. F (1958) | 3. T | 4. T |
| 5. T | 4. T | 5. T | |

b. Read the text again and answer the following questions.

Đáp án:

- In 1904.
- Because an international soccer tournament well-known as the World Cup is held every four years and more than a billion people around the world watch it on television.
- Because Pelé won fame for his amazing ball control and powerful shots.
- In 1991 in China.
- Because severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) emerged as a serious health problem in China.

c. Complete the following sentences with suitable words from the reading.

Đáp án:

- | | | | | |
|------------|----------------|----------|-----------|------------|
| 1. popular | 2. participate | 3. final | 4. trophy | 5. qualify |
|------------|----------------|----------|-----------|------------|

d) Work in groups. Tell your partner what you know about soccer tournament in Vietnam.

Đáp án gợi ý:

Team _____ became champion of last year V-League.

_____ was the best player.

_____ was the best goal keeper.

etc.

I. LISTENING

What games are people playing in the pictures below?

Đáp án:

a. soccer

c. swimming

e. tennis

b. chess

d. horse racing

You are going to listen to five reports of athletes at their games. Match the recordings with the correct pictures.

NOTE:

return (n):

cú đánh trả

cross-court (adv): to the opposite side of the court, (phần sân quần vợt đối diện)

length (n): the measure from end to end of a horse, (khoảng cách bằng chiều dài của một con ngựa)

breaststroke (n):

kiểu bơi ếch

bishop (n):

(cờ) quân tướng

castle (n):

(cờ) quân xe,

Đáp án:

1. a

3. d

5. b

2. e

4. c

Listen to the recordings again and complete the following sentences.

Đáp án:

1. the ball; runs toward it

4. breaststroke; freestyle

2. hit the ball; the ball flying

5. bishop; pressure

3. the last; threw

Listen to the commentary of a game between the Boston Celtics and the Los Angeles Lakers and answer the following questions.

Đáp án:

1. Basketball.

2. The Boston Celtics.

3. It is now a tie.

4. The Boston Celtics

5. The start of the second half

Report on a sporting event you have recently watched or participated in

Đáp án gợi ý:

Last Sunday there was a friendly football match between our school and Nguyen Du school. In the first half the match was boring because neither team scored any goals. At the beginning of the second half, the captain of our school passed the ball to the striker who then gave a strong kick straight to the goal and scored. We all jumped up and cheered. After that, the game became more intense because both teams tried to win. When the game was over, all of us were very happy because our team won 1-0. We felt very proud of our team.

III SPEAKING

Describing Popular Sports

a. What games are people playing in the pictures below? Work with a partner. Take turns to talk about the pictures.

Đáp án:

- | | |
|---------------|-----------------|
| a. basketball | e. tennis |
| b. soccer | f. volleyball |
| c. hurdles | g. table tennis |
| d. cycling | |
- b. In groups, describe how people play the games above.

*** Chú thích:**

a. Basketball: Basket ball is played by two teams of five players in which goals are scored by throwing a large ball into an open-ended net fixed high on a hoop at the opponents' end of the court

b. Soccer: (football). a football game in which two teams of 11 players try to kick or head a ball into the opponents' goal

c. Hurdles: hurdles is an individual sport. The athlete runs and jumps over series of upright frames. The first one to come to the finishing point is the winner.

d. Cycling: It's a race in which cyclists have to cover a long distance to reach the finishing point. The first one to come to the finishing point is the winner.

e. Tennis: It's a game for two or four players who hit a ball backwards and forwards across a net with rackets.

f. Volleyball: It's a game in which opposing teams of players hit a ball backwards and forwards over a high net with their hands without letting it touch the ground on their own side.

g. table tennis: (ping-pong) It's a game played like tennis for two or four players with bats and a plastic ball on a table with a net across it.

Đáp án gợi ý:

1)

Ba: Minh, look at this picture. What kind of game is it?

Minh: It's a hurdle- race, but it's not a popular sport in Vietnam.

Ba: Does it need any equipment?

Minh: Yes, the athletes have to run and jump over a series of upright frames.

Tan: How do they win the game?

Minh: The first one to arrive at the finishing point is the winner.

2)

Binh: Among the games here, I like basketball best.

an: You do? How many players take part in the game?
 linh: Basket ball is played by two teams and each has five players.
 Iga: Does it need any equipment?
 linh: Yes, a basketball and two open-ended nets fixed high on hoops at both ends of the court.
 Iga: How long does the game last?
 linh: The game is divided into quarters. Each quarter lasts 12 minutes.
 an: How do the players score or win the game?
 linh: By throwing the ball into the opponent's hoop.
 an: So the team that scores the most by the end of the game is the winner?
 linh: That's right.

.....
 . Work in groups. Take turns to talk about your favourite sport and how you benefit from it.

Favourite sports: swimming, tennis, volleyball, etc.

Benefits:

Swimming helps keep fit and have good body build.
 etc.

V. WRITING

Writing an Announcement

. Read the following announcement. In pairs, make a WH -question and an answer for each line of the announcement.

Đáp án gợi ý:

Questions

Who is the announcer?

On what occasion is it celebrated?

What's the name of the sports event?

What teams play in this match?

When is this match held?

Where is this match held?

Who are invited?

Answers

1. Le Van Minh, Manager of the Sports Club

2. The Youth League's Foundation Day.

3. Friendly Volleyball Match.

4. Local Language School vs. Sports Club.

5. 4 p.m. Saturday, March 07, 200_.

6. School Stadium.

7. All students are invited.

. Write an announcement of a sporting event or an activity in your school.

Đáp án gợi ý:

1) Announcer: Captain of the school football team.

Event: A friendly match between Bui Thi Xuan football team and
 Nguyen Du football team

Date: Saturday April 26th

Time: 3p.m

Venue: Bui Thi Xuan's playground

BUI THI XUAN SCHOOL FOOTBALL TEAM

The captain of Bui Thi Xuan Football Team wishes to announce that the friendly match between Bui Thi Xuan and Nguyen Du will be played at 3.p.m on Saturday April 26 at Bui Thi Xuan 's playground.

Phan Quốc Việt

Captain of Bui Thi Xuan Football Team

2) Announcer: Vice Manager of the School Sports Club

Event: Establishment of a Ten-grade Soccer Team

Eligible Members: Ten-grade boys with good health and a height of 170 centimeters or above.

SCHOOL SPORTS CLUB

In order to create more opportunities for students to practise sports, the Youth League Sports Club of Lam Son High School will set up a Ten-grade Soccer Team.

All ten-grade boys who have good health with a height of 170 centimeters or above and who are keen on playing soccer are eligible for recruitment and training.

Enrollment will begin on March 3 and end on March 20.

Tran Van Vinh

Vice Manager of School Sports Club

V. LANGUAGE FOCUS

Word study

Words Used in Soccer

Ngoài những từ được trình bày trong sách giáo khoa, các từ sau đây được sử dụng để nói về bóng đá

Nouns - players / captain/ defender/ striker/ goal keeper/ referee

- spectators/ opponents

- home team/ visiting team

- goal kick (cú phát bóng) – freekick (quả đá phạt trực tiếp)

- offside (việt vị)

- nside left/ right (tiền vệ trái/ phải)

- goalpost (cột dọc)/ goal-line (đường biên ngang)

goal-kick (cú đá của bên phòng ngự để đưa bóng trở vào trận đấu sau khi bên tấn công đã đưa bóng ra ngoài đường biên ngang)

goal-area (khu vực hình chữ nhật, có đánh dấu phía trước gôn)

place-kick (cú đá sau khi đặt bóng xuống đất)

header (cú đánh đầu)

verbs - infringe (phạm lỗi) – dribble (lừa bóng) – pass the ball (chuyền bóng) –

score a goal (ghi bàn) – take a pass (nhận đường chuyền) – even up the score

(san bằng tỉ số) – obstruct (truy cản) – blow a whistle (thổi còi) – defeat – boo

(a ó) / shout

adjectives: boring, competitive, exciting, interesting, fair/ unfair, drawn (hoà),

sportsmanlike, decisive (quyết liệt), goalless

học hành:

. Use the correct forms of the words given to fill in the blanks. You can use one word twice.

Đáp án:

. beaten / defeated

. beaten

. won

. scored

. Locate the following on the map of a soccer field, using the words and phrases in the box.

Đáp án:

. touch line

. penalty spot

. goal line

. goal area

5. goal

6. penalty area

7. center line

Grammar

o+ Base Form of Verb Expressing Purpose.

o+ Base form of Verb as Modifier.

To + Base Form

To + Base Form of Verb Expressing Purposes

Chúng ta sử dụng **To + Base Form of Verb** để diễn tả hay nói đến một mục đích.

We eat to live not live to eat

I went to the library to borrow books for the class report

. **To + Base Form of Verb** còn được sử dụng để giải thích tại sao một vật gì đó liên hữu hay tại sao người ta cần hay muốn một cái gì đó.

This book is to give synonyms and antonyms of words

She bought this house to spend her summer holiday.

To speak English well you should practise it regularly

2. To + Base Form of Verb as Modifier

a. Chúng ta có thể sử dụng *to + base form of verb* sau danh từ hoặc một vài đại từ như một cụm từ bổ nghĩa

Is there anything **to say**? (which you want to say)

b. Cấu trúc *to + base form of verb* này thường được sử dụng sau

- a superlative (**the youngest / the most intelligent**, etc.);
- **the first / the second / the third**, etc.;
- **the next / the last**;
- **the only**.

Who was **the first** to come and **the last** to leave your party?

(=Who was **the first person** who came and **the last person** who left your party?)

This is **the only** girl to know the whole story.

(=This is **the only** girl who knows the whole story).

Lưu ý rằng cấu trúc này chỉ có thể sử dụng trong trường hợp danh từ dùng kèm với từ so sánh bậc tối cao (the superlative) như **the first / the second / the third**, etc.; **the next / the last**; **the only** cũng là chủ từ của động từ theo sau.

Is this the first time that you have stayed here? (chúng ta không nói "the first time for you to stay here" bởi vì **time** không phải là chủ từ của **stay**)

c. *To + base form of verb* có thể sử dụng như từ bổ nghĩa cho *noun*, hoặc *indefinite pronoun* như "something".

He has something **to tell** you now (=He has something that he wants to tell you now).

help (=Is there anyone who can help me?)

There are a lot of things **to do** tonight. (= There are a lot of things that we must do tonight.)

Nếu danh từ hoặc đại từ là object của *to + base form of verb*, chúng ta không được thêm túc từ sau cấu trúc *to + base form of verb*.

She cut the flowers **to sell** (not She cut the flowers to sell them)

I need a book **to read**. (not I need a book to read "it")

Thực hành

a. Check (✓) the sentences in which the underlined parts express purposes.

Đáp án:

1. ☒

6. ☒

2. ☐

7. ☐

3. ☒ 8. ☒
 4. ☐ 9. ☒
 5. ☒ 10. ☒

b. Rewrite the following sentences, using to + base form of verb phrases as modifiers.

Đáp án:

2. The goalkeeper is the only player to be allowed to touch the ball with his hands when the ball is in play.
 3. Which nation became the first one to win the World Cup trophy three times?
 4. It is an important rule to follow in this game.
 5. Was he the only player to score in that game?
 3. Cooperation is a lesson to learn from team sports.

BÀI TẬP Củng Cố

UNIT 14

A. PHONETICS

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in the same line.

- | | | | | |
|---|-------------------|------------|-----------|-----------|
| 1 | A. foot | B. mood | C. boo | D. shoot |
| 2 | A. teams | B. shots | C. cups | D. kicks |
| 3 | A. <u>watched</u> | B. cheered | C. played | D. scored |
| 4 | A. <u>touch</u> | B. ache | C. teach | D. match |
| 5 | A. show | B. bow | C. sow | D. know |

II. Choose the word whose stress pattern is different from the rest in each group.

- | | | | | |
|----|---------------|-----------------|---------------|----------------|
| 3 | A. opposing | B. governing | C. amazing | D. exciting |
| 7 | A. tournament | B. government | C. statement | D. equipment |
| 3 | A. popular | B. ambitious | C. consistent | D. exciting |
| 9 | A. compete | B. dribble | C. allow | D. defend |
| 10 | A. commentary | B. announcement | C. competitor | D. replacement |

B. GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY.

These are incomplete sentences. Circle A or B, C, D as your best choice to complete each sentence or exchange.

11. The World Cup is an important _____ event of the world.
 A. sportive B. sporting C. sporty D. sport

12. Winning the cup is winning the _____ title.
A. valuable B. good C. honoured D. famous
13. Football players who attend the World Cup must be _____.
A. experts B. specialists C. amateurs D. professional
14. At its first meeting FIFA planned to organize a world _____.
A. team B. champion C. championship D. event
15. Which country was the _____ of the World Cup 1954?
A. home country B. host country
C. organizer D. conductor
16. In final match of the World Cup 2002, Germany was defeated by Brazil and was the _____.
A. winner B. runner - up C. champion D. loser
17. Many soccer fans _____ Pele the best soccer player of all time.
A. agree B. regard C. consider D. vote
18. - " _____ ?"
- "The Fédération Internationale de Football Association"
A. What is FIFA? B. What does FIFA stand for?
C. What does FIFA mean? D. What does FIFA come from ?
19. In football, it is the _____ who is allowed to touch the ball with his hands.
A. captain B. striker C. referee D. goalkeeper
20. Players generally use their feet and their _____ as they kick, dribble and pass the ball towards the goal.
A. hands B. arms C. heads D. shoulders
21. There is one tournament for men and _____ for women.
A. other B. another C. the other D. others
22. _____ Cong Vinh gave a kick straight to the goal, nearly all the spectators jumped up and cheered.
A. Before B. While C. After D. As soon as
23. A football match is divided into halves, each of which _____ 45 minutes.
A. lasts B. lengthens C. longs D. takes
24. Uruguay was the first country _____ the World Cup trophy.
A. winning B. won C. to win D. having won
25. I need a book _____.
A. for me to read tonight B. I read it tonight
C. to read tonight D. which I read tonight

C. READING.

Read the following passage carefully and then choose the best option to fit each space by circling the letter A or B, C, D.

In the match between Parkfield School and Greenport Football Club which took place at Greenport (26) _____ Saturday, the Parkfield team beat Greenport by three goals to two.

The last time the two (27) _____ met, Greenport won by three goals to nil, so Parkfield were making a great (28) _____ to win this game.

In the first half of the game, Greenport (29) _____ leading by two goals, and Parkfield's position looked hopeless. However, Greenport made a number of (30) _____ mistakes during the second half. This was after their star player, Brown, missed the ball, slipped and (31) _____ heavily, injuring his left ankle.

Parkfield then scored two lucky (32) _____, and in the few minutes before the finish, Prescott shot the ball (33) _____ the net for them, bringing the score to three goals to two. Parkfield have (34) _____ well this season, and their fans have good reason to be proud. Greenport too, have had good results up to now. Out of the last five games played, this is the first game they have (35) _____

- | | | | |
|-----------------|------------|-------------|----------------|
| 26. A. next | B. every | C. once | D. last |
| 27. A. dates | B. teams | C. fights | D. events |
| 28. A. effort | B. chance | C. journey | D. competition |
| 29. A. had | B. were | C. seemed | D. made |
| 30. A. careless | B. many | C. generous | D. deep |
| 31. A. kicked | B. bent | C. fell | D. ran |
| 32. A. goals | B. players | C. matches | D. teams |
| 33. A. up | B. through | C. into | D. beneath |
| 34. A. been | B. lost | C. made | D. played |
| 35. A. won | B. beaten | C. missed | D. lost |

D. WRITING.

A In these sentences, each one has four underlined words or phrases marked A, B, C, and D. Choose the one word or phrase that must be changed in order for the sentence to be correct by circling letter A or B, C, D.

36 Why do many soccer fans consider Pelé all the time best soccer player?

A B C D

37. Much than a billion people around the world watch the World Cup on television

A B C D

39. The match between Hai Quan and The Cong has postponed due to
A B C
bad weather
D

- B Complete the sentences using to + base form of verb phrases as modifiers**

- ## Keys: Unit 14

A. PHONETICS

- I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in the same line.**

- 1 A.foot 2 A. teams 3 A.watched 4 B. ache 5 B.bow

- II. Choose the word whose stress pattern is different from the rest in each group.**

- 6 B. governing 7 D. equipment 8 A. popular
9 B. dribble 10 A. commentary

B. GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY.

- 11 B.sporting 12 C.honoured 13 D. professional
14 C.championship 15 B. host country 16 B. runner-up
17 C. consider 18 B.What does FIFA stand for? 19 D. goalkeeper

- 20 C. heads 21 B. another 22 D. As soon as 23 A. lasts
24 C. to win 25 C. to read tonight

C. READING.

- 26 D. last 27 B. teams 28 A. effort 29 B. were 30 A. careless
31 C. fell 32 A. goals 33 C. into 34 D. played 35 D. lost

D. WRITING

A In these sentences, each one has four underlined words or phrases marked A, B, C, and D. Choose the one word or phrase that must be changed in order for the sentence to be correct by circling letter A or B, C, D.

- 36 D all the time → the all-time
37 A. Much than → More than
38. under → across
39 B has postponed → has been postponed
40 to sell them → to sell

B Complete the following sentences:

1. She has bought some eggs; flour and sugar **to make a cake.**
2. Is that the only restaurant **to have lunch?**
3. He has been waiting for you for an hour. He has got something **to tell you.**
4. China is the country **to host the first Women's World Cup tournament.**
5. Tom was the last person **to leave the party.**
6. She is happy that she has found a nice place **to live in.**
7. Everest is the most difficult **to climb.**
8. Have you got any eggs **to sell?**
9. Could you buy me some oranges **to make orange juice?**
10. I'm so happy to say that this is the last thing **to be done.**

Unit 15

PACIFIC RIM

VÀNH ĐAI THÁI BÌNH DƯƠNG

READING

Before You Read

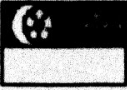
a)

ĐÁP ÁN

Asia, Australia, North America, South America

b)

ĐÁP ÁN

1.  Australia 2.  Canada 3.  Japan
4.  Singapore

c)

ĐÁP ÁN

1. Canberra 2. Ottawa 3. Tokyo 4. Singapore

Reading Text

BÀI DỊCH GỢI Ý

Khu vực vành đai Thái Bình Dương mang đến sự đa dạng lớn lao – nh tính năng động về kinh tế của Hương Cảng, Đài Loan, và Singapore; sự phát triển công nghệ cao tiên tiến ở Nhật Bản, Hàn Quốc và vùng Tây Hoa Kỳ; tài nguyên thiên nhiên của Úc Châu, Canada, Phi-Líp-Pin và Vùng Viễn Đông nước Nga; và nguồn nhân lực ở Trung Quốc, In-đô-nê-xia và Việt Nam; và cùng với năng lực sản xuất nông nghiệp ở Chi-lê, Tân Tây Lan, Mê-Hi-Cô, Phi-Líp-Pin và Hoa Kỳ trong số các quốc gia khác. Một số nhà lý thuyết cho rằng trung tâm của hoạt động kinh tế thế giới có lẽ sẽ tái tập trung vào vành đai Thái Bình Dương.

Nhật Bản, một quốc gia có trên 3000 hòn đảo, trải dài dọc theo bờ biển đông (Thái Bình Dương) của Châu Á, chiếm diện tích 337.835 cây số vuông (gồm cả 3091 cây số vuông lãnh hải). Thủ đô và thành phố lớn nhất là Tokyo với dân số là 126.771.669, tiếng Nhật là ngôn ngữ chính thức. Nước Nhật ngày nay xếp hạng trong số các quốc gia công nghiệp hàng đầu của thế giới. Nhật Bản cũng là nước xuất khẩu nhiều nhất sang Hoa Kỳ và Đức.

Khối Thịnh Vượng Chung Úc Châu nằm ở phía đông nam Châu Á giữ Thái Bình Dương và Ấn Độ Dương. Quốc gia này gồm phần lục địa Australia đại lục lớn nhất, và một số hòn đảo. Nó có diện tích 7.682.300 cây số vuông và dân số 19.357.594 người. Canberra là thủ đô và Sydney là thành phố lớn nhất

Ngôn ngữ chính thức là tiếng Anh. Khoảng độ 94 % dân có gốc Châu Âu. Australia là quốc gia sản xuất và xuất khẩu len hàng đầu thế giới. Quốc gia này cũng được xếp hạng là quốc gia chính yếu xuất khẩu lúa mì, thịt, sản phẩm từ sữa và các loại thực phẩm khác.

Cộng Hòa Singapore là một đảo quốc ở Đông Nam Á có tổng số diện tích 692,7 cây số vuông và dân số đa chủng tộc 4.425.720 người. Thành phố lớn nhất vừa là thủ đô Singapore City. Ngôn ngữ chính thức là tiếng Mã Lai (Quốc Ngữ), tiếng Anh, tiếng Trung Quốc và tiếng Tamil. Sau khi Singapore trở thành quốc gia độc lập vào năm 1965, đầu tư nước ngoài đã kích thích sự tăng trưởng nhanh chóng cho quốc gia. Ngày nay, Singapore có một trong những mức sống cao nhất ở Châu Á, nền kinh tế tập trung sản xuất các thiết bị điện, đóng tàu, lọc dầu, du lịch, dịch vụ ngân hàng quốc tế, và thương mại quốc tế.

Canada trải dài từ Đại Tây Dương ở phía đông sang Thái Bình Dương ở phía tây. Canada là quốc gia lớn nhất thứ hai của thế giới có diện tích 9.970.610 cây số vuông. Thủ đô là Ottawa, và thành phố lớn nhất là Toronto. Dân số của Canada là 31.592.805 người, và khoảng độ $\frac{1}{3}$ dân số có gốc từ nước Anh. $\frac{1}{4}$ dân số có gốc Pháp, sống chủ yếu ở Quebec và còn giữ nguyên ngôn ngữ nền văn hóa của họ. Ngôn ngữ chính thức là Anh và Pháp. Khoảng $\frac{4}{5}$ hàng xuất khẩu của Canada là xuất sang Hoa Kỳ, và hơn $\frac{2}{3}$ hàng nhập khẩu là từ các nước lân cận.

Chú thích: Tamil: ngôn ngữ của người ở Tamil Nadu, một quốc gia nằm về phía Đông Nam nam Ấn Độ, giáp vịnh Băng-Gan. [Thủ đô: Madras. Diện tích: 130.286 km²] và của nước Sri Lanka [Thủ đô: Colombo. Diện tích: 65.863 km²].

a)

ĐÁP ÁN

Country	Area (sq. km)	Capital	Largest City	Population	Language(s)
Australia	7,682,300	Canberra	Sydney	19,357,594	English
Canada	9,970,610	Ottawa	Toronto	31,592,805	English, French
Japan	377.835	Tokyo	Tokyo	126,771,660	Japanese
Singapore	692.7	Singapore	Singapore	4,425,720	Malay, English, Chinese, Tamil

b)

ĐÁP ÁN

1. official (paragraph 2)
2. leading (paragraph 2)
3. major (paragraph 3)
4. population (paragraph 2)
5. coast (paragraph 2)

c)

ĐÁP ÁN

1. The United States and Germany are larger exporters than Japan. (paragraph 2)
2. According to the statistics provided, Canada is the largest of all. (9,970,610 sq. km)
3. Singapore is the country which has the smallest area.

LISTENING

a)

ĐÁP ÁN

1. Countries nearest the North Pole are Canada, the USA (Alaska), Russia, Iceland, Norway, Finland, Denmark, and Sweden.
2. Americans are fond of hamburgers and pumpkin pie.
3. Singapore has a merlion in its national emblem.

b)

Chú Thích:

- cosmopolitan (city): (thành phố) đa quốc tịch
- diamond-shaped island: hòn đảo có hình viên kim cương
- shipping route: lộ trình tàu chạy; hải trình
- merlion: [do 2 từ "*mer*" + "*lion*": hải sư; tương tự, *mermaid*: nàng tiên cá]
- multi-racial: đa chủng tộc
- ranch: trang trại (nuôi một loại gia súc hoặc một loại hoa màu nào đó ở Hoa Kỳ, Úc)

Châu, e.g. a cattle / sheep / cotton ranch

ĐÁP ÁN

Speaker	Country
A	Singapore
B	Canada
C	The United States

c)

ĐÁP ÁN

- Speaker A:**
1. F (The country is a *diamond-shaped* island.)
 2. F (The country is in *South-East Asia*.)
 3. T

Speaker B:

4. F (His country is the *second biggest* [one] in the world.)
5. T
6. T

Speaker C:

7. T

8. F (A large number of their people live on farms, ranches, and small towns.)

9. F (Their popular sports are *baseball* and football.)

SPEAKING. Asking for Giving Information About Cities

1)

ĐÁP ÁN

1. A: When was Mexico City founded? B: It was founded in 1325. A: What is its area? B: About 1,547 square kilometers. A: What is its population? B: 9,815,795	2. A: When was Tokyo founded? B: It was founded in the 12th century. A: What is its area? B: About 2,180 square kilometers. A: What is its population? B: 7,966,195
3. A: When was Sydney founded? B: It was founded in 1788. A: What is its area? B: About 1,580 square kilometers. A: What is its population? B: 3,738,500	4. A: When was Toronto founded? B: It was founded in 1793. A: What is its area? B: About 5,868 square kilometers. A: What is its population? B: 4,263,757

2)

ĐÁP ÁN GỢI Ý

Hi, everyone. I would like to give you some information about Singapore. Well, Singapore is an island-country or a city-state. Its official name is the Republic of Singapore. It is located between Malaysia and Indonesia. It is the smallest country in Southeast Asia, with an area of just about 648 sq km/250 sq mi. with the main island and a few smaller ones. The name Singapore is derived from the Malay words *singa* meaning 'lion' and *pura* meaning 'city' which gave it the title '*the Lion City*'. It became an independent member of the British Commonwealth in 1965. At present, the population is 4,608,595 (2003) People speak Chinese, Malay, Singapore English, Tamil in Singapore. Singapore is Southeast Asia's most important seaport, financial centre, and manufacturing hub, and its citizens enjoy one of the world's highest standards of living. Thank you for your attention!

Hi, everyone. I would like to give you some information about Canada and particularly, the biggest city of this country, Toronto. Well, the city and its surrounding area were founded in 1793 with a total area of 5,868 square kilometers. At present, the city's population is about 4,263,757... Thank you for your attention!

Chú Thích:

islet: đảo nhỏ

financial centre: trung tâm thương mại

hub (= center of activity): trung tâm hoạt động.

Post Speaking.

c)

CÂU HỎI GỢI Ý CHUẨN BỊ

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. When was it founded? | 2. Where is it located? |
| 2. What is its population? | 3. What is the weather like? |
| 3. What do the inhabitants do for living? | 6. Name some sights or specialties. |
| 7. What are the plans for the future? | 7. Why do you like living there? |

ĐÁP ÁN GỢI Ý

My home town Y. T., was founded in 1967, where the Lâm Tuyên Spring branched off from the Hoa Giang River. It is about 320 kilometres from the City of H.K. There are only about 15,000 people in our town. They are mostly silk breeders and craftsmen. But our town has earned a reputation for excellent education and learning. Here the air is clear and dry, the skies are blue, and at night is pitch dark. You can hear birds chirping, the spring murmuring all day, and Mt. Dau, half hidden in blue cloud far away.

Y. T. is expected to be urbanized to become a 'làng nghề' ecotourism site in the next five years.

I love Y. T. because I was born, grew up and enjoyed a happy childhood there.

WRITING

Writing a Postcard

a)

ĐÁP ÁN

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---|
| 1. Salutation | ⇒ b. Dear Mary, |
| 2. Body | |
| * <i>Your feeling</i> | ⇒ c. We are having a wonderful time here in Vietnam. |
| * <i>The weather</i> | ⇒ f. The weather is wonderful. |
| * <i>The place</i> | ⇒ d. Our hotel is very near the beach. |
| * <i>Things you have done</i> | ⇒ e. Yesterday we took a boat trip to a small island and spent the day lying on the beach and exploring the island. |
| * <i>Future plans</i> | ⇒ g. We are visiting a coastal village and enjoying seafood today. |
| 3. Closing | ⇒ a. See you soon. |
| 4. Signature | ⇒ h. John |

)

ĐÁP ÁN GỢI Ý

Dear John,

We have been in Cần Thơ for nearly a week. The weather is fine and the food is delicious. Our hotel is at Ninh Kiều Pier, not far from the city centre, so the supermarket is round the corner.

Yesterday we went to Tra Cu floating market – almost everything is sold and bought on board! Last Monday, we visited the Thủy Tiên ecotourist site, 10 km away from the city, where there are too many kinds of orchids, snakes, sea turtles, bears, and pythons.

Tonight, we're going to the Tây Đô Night Market and tomorrow we're going on a tour to Long Xuyên Ancient Village, which was said to have been founded in 1884. I'm anxious about this tour because I want to take as many photos of this village as possible.

I'll e-mail you these photos next Saturday.

Best wishes,

Mai Hoa

LANGUAGE FOCUS

Word study. Countries, Nationalities, and Languages

)

ĐÁP ÁN

Country	Capital City	People	Language(s)
Australia	Canberra	Australian	English
Canada	Ottawa	Canadian	English, French
Chile	Santiago	Chilean	Spanish
Indonesia	Jakarta	Indonesian	Indonesian
New Zealand	Wellington	New Zealander	English
Peru	Lima	Peruvian	Spanish
The Philippines	Manila	Filipino	English, Tagalog
Singapore	Singapore	Singaporean	Malay, English, Chinese, Tamil
Thailand	Bangkok	Thai	Thai
The United States	Washington, D.C.	American	English
Vietnam	Hanoi	Vietnamese	Vietnamese

) Complete the following sentences with the appropriate words from the table above.

DÁP ÁN

- | | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. Japanese; Japanese | 2. Australia; English | 3. Malaysian; Malay |
| 4. Canada; French | 5. The Philippines; Filipinos | 6. Singapore |
| 7. Thai | 8. The United States, English | |
| 9. New Zealand, English | | |

Grammar

CHÚ THÍCH NGỮ PHÁP

I. COMPARATIVE + THAN

To compare the difference between two people, things or events.

Examples:

Mt. Everest is *higher than* Mt. Blanc.

Thailand is *sunnier than* Norway.

A car is *more expensive than* a bicycle.

Albert is *more intelligent than* Arthur.

II. AS + ADJECTIVE + AS

To compare people, places, events or things, when there is no difference, use **as + adjective**

+ **as:**

Examples:

- Peter is 24 years old. John is 24 years old. Peter is *as old as* John.
- Einstein is *as famous as* Darwin.
- A tiger is *as dangerous as* a lion.

III. NOT AS + ADJECTIVE + AS

Difference can also be shown by using **not so/as...as**

Examples:

- Mont Blanc is *not as high as* Mount Everest
- Arthur is *not as intelligent as* Albert

IV. COMPARISONS OF QUANTITY

To show difference: **more, less, fewer + than**

Example:

- A billionaire has *more money than* a millionaire.
- A farmer has *less money but more children than* a businessman.

To show no difference: **as much as, as many as, as few as, as little as**

Example:

- They earn *as much as* my father (does).
- We ran *as far as* the top of the hill.

V. COMPARISONS OF QUANTITY

To show difference: *more, less, fewer + than*

Examples:

* With countable nouns: *more / fewer*

- Mrs. Nga has *more* children *than* Mrs. Lan.
- There are *fewer* dogs in London *than* in Hanoi.
- Selfish persons have *fewer* friends *than* generous ones.

* With uncountable nouns: *more / less*

- A beauty uses *more* cosmetics *than* a singer.
- Cats drink *less* water *than* dogs.

VI. COMPARISONS OF QUANTITY

To show no difference: *as much as, as many as, as few as, as little as*

1. *as many as / as few as* + countable nouns

2. *as much as / as little as* + uncountable nouns

Examples:

- With countable nouns:

- The Bloom's have *as many* customers *as* the Luigi's.
- There are *as few* houses in his village *as* in mine.

- With uncountable nouns:

- You've heard *as much* news *as* I have.
- They've got *as little* water *as* we have.

a) Comparisons (Revision)

ĐÁP ÁN

1. more interesting 2. most 3. As 4. hottest

b)

ĐÁP ÁN GỢI Ý

Sydney, Australia

* Sydney has a longer history than Toronto because it was founded in 1788 while the latter was founded in 1793.

* Sydney is smaller than Toronto because its area is 1,580 sq. km while the latter's is 5,868 sq. km.

* Sydney is less densely populated than Toronto because its population is 3,738,500 while the latter's is 4,263,757.

Mexico City

* Mexico City has a shorter history than Tokyo because it was founded in 1325 while the latter was founded in the twelfth century.

* Mexico City is smaller than Tokyo because its area is 1,547 sq. km while the latter's is 2,180 sq. km.

* Mexico City is more densely populated than Tokyo because its population is 9,815,795 while the latter's is 7,966,195.

BÀI TẬP Củng Cố 15

A. PHONETICS

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in the same line.

- | | | | |
|----------------------------|----------------------|------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. A. <u>d</u> aily | B. <u>d</u> airy | C. <u>m</u> ail | D. <u>tr</u> ade |
| 2. A. multir <u>a</u> cial | B. <u>o</u> cean | C. <u>s</u> ociety | D. <u>a</u> ncient |
| 3. A. <u>m</u> ajor | B. <u>G</u> ernamy | C. <u>a</u> griculture | D. <u>r</u> egion |
| 4. A. Japan <u>e</u> se | B. <u>a</u> rea | C. <u>e</u> astern | D. <u>r</u> egion |
| 5. A. <u>w</u> aters | B. <u>A</u> ustralia | C. <u>r</u> esources | D. stand <u>ar</u> d |

II. Choose the word whose stress pattern is different from the rest in each group.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|----------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 6. A. continent | B. refocus | C. Pacific | D. resources |
| 7. A. Toronto | B. origin | C. production | D. investment |
| 8. A. petroleum | B. official | C. electronic | D. activity |
| 9. A. territorial | B. multiracial | C. productivity | D. industrialized |
| 10. A. independent | B. stimulated | C. technology | D. population |

B. USE OF LANGUAGE.

Choose the word or phrase (A, B, C or D) that best fits the blank space in each sentence.

11. In his good mood, Dad _____ to do the dishes.
A. was offered B. offered C. offering D. offers
12. There is a need for greater _____ and choice in education.
A. diversity B. diverse C. difference D. variety
13. He's got the job because of his _____ personality.
A. dynamics B. dynamic C. dynamism D. dynamical
14. The factory has tried to make use of the most modern _____ to increase its products.
A. technologies B. technology C. technicians D. technological
15. Schools in the mountainous areas are still inadequately _____.
A. resourceful B. resourced C. resource D. resources
16. This exercise _____ on the latest grammar point.
A. reviews B. refocuses C. revises D. retells

17. The school is _____ the range of subjects (that will be) taught.
A. extending B. expanded C. expanding D. extended
18. Dak Nong is still a thinly _____ province.
A. popular B. populated C. popularized D. populatting
19. That country has refused to allow UN troops to be stationed in its _____.
A. state B. nation C. territory D. boundary
20. The southern part of the country was slow to _____.
A. industrialize B. industry C. industrial D. industrialized
21. Britain's neighbours are France and Italy.
A. mainland B. native C. continental D. inland
22. The exercises have been in order of difficulty.
A. rank B. ranked C. ranking D. ranks
23. Japan is the world's leading _____ of motorbikes to Asian countries.
A. exportation B. exports C. exporting D. exporter
24. The Netherlands is noted for its _____ industry.
A. milk B. dairy C. cheese D. butter
25. Their marriage was solidly _____ on love and mutual respect.
A. foundation B. founder C. founding D. founded
26. Phu Quoc is a remote _____ off the coast of Kien Giang.
A. islet B. island C. ocean D. land
27. My sister is allergic to fish.
A. sea B. marine C. deep D. oceanic
28. Grapes were _____ in Ninh Thuan Province long ago.
A. natural B. naturalized C. native D. national
29. Our government has heavily in public transport and education.
A. investment B. investings C. invested D. investors
30. College-examinees are persuaded to use this drug to _____ their brain for their studies.
A. stimulate B. stimulus C. stimuli D. stimulation

31. READING

- Read the passage below then choose the correct answers to the questions that follow it.

THE COMMONWEALTH

Formerly known as the *British Commonwealth of Nations*, the Commonwealth is a loose association of former British colonies, dependencies and other territories - and Mozambique, which has no historical ties to Britain.

The modern Commonwealth has its roots in the 19th century, when the British Empire began to disintegrate. As some of its constituent parts gained varying degrees of independence from the motherland, a new constitutional

definition of their relationship with each other had to be found. But it was only after India's and Pakistan's independence in 1947 that the Commonwealth defined its modern shape. It dropped the word *British* from *its* name, the allegiance to the crown from its statute, and became a receptacle for decolonised nations. The British monarch, however, remained the official "head of the Commonwealth".

The Commonwealth has no constitution or charter, but the heads of government of its member states hold Commonwealth Heads of Government Meetings (CHOGM) every two years to discuss issues of common interest.

In between the summits, the London-based Secretariat - the Commonwealth executive arm - takes responsibility for carrying out programmes agreed upon during the various meetings. The Secretariat is headed by a secretary-general.

As head of the Commonwealth, the Queen (Queen Elizabeth II) is recognised by its members as the "symbol of their free association". She attends the Commonwealth summits and the Commonwealth Games, which are held every four years. Also, on every Commonwealth Day, which is the second Monday in March, she broadcasts a message to all member countries.

31. When did the modern Commonwealth come into being?

- A. in 1990
- B. when the British Empire began to fall apart
- C. when British colonies were formed
- D. in 1947

32. How often do member countries of the Commonwealth meet?

- A. twice a year B. every two years C. twice every year D. yearly

33. What does "heads of states" mean?

- A. leading states B. leading statesmen
- C. leaders of states D. stating leaders

34. Who is the head of the commonwealth at present?

- A. the London-based Secretariat B. the CHOGM
- C. Britain D. Queen Elizabeth II

35. "... the word *British* from *its* name, ..." (line 8). What does *its* replace?

- A. The British's B. Britain's
- C. The Commonwealth's D. Pakistan's

II. Cloze-Text. Read the passage and find ONE suitable word to fill in each space:

The Pacific Ocean was named by legendary navigator Ferdinand Magellan. A (36) of Portugal, Magellan renounced his loyalty to that nation after King Emanuel rejected Magellan's petition for a post within the royal navy. Magellan then (37) for Spain, which agreed to support Magellan's claim.

western route to the Spice Islands through a seaway near the southern tip of South America.

On September 20, 1519, Magellan and a (38) of 270 men set sail from Spain on their around-the-world voyage in five small vessels including his flagship *Trinidad*, *Concepcion*, *San Antonio*, *Victoria*, and *Santiago*. It took the fleet, or at least the three remaining ships in the fleet, 38 days to (39) the strait around South America that was to bear Magellan's name. During the last week of November, the fleet emerged into what Magellan described as a beautiful, peaceful ocean." Thus, it was (40) the Pacific Ocean ("pacific" meaning "peaceful.") (41) entering the Pacific Ocean, Magellan mistakenly thought the Spice Islands were only a short voyage away. Nearly four months (42), in March 1521, he and his crew finally reached what is known today as the Philippines. A few weeks later, he was fatally wounded after becoming (43) in a dispute between warring Philippine tribes. Only one ship, *Victoria*, and 18 of Magellan's original crew members returned to Spain, thereby (44) the first circumnavigation of the globe. Although Magellan's route proved impractical for the spice trade, his voyage has been called the greatest single human achievement (45)..... the seas.

Notes: legendary: theo truyền thuyết; truyền kỳ - **crew:** thủy thủ đoàn - **strait:** eo biển - **navigate:** đi bằng tàu thủy - **fleet:** đội tàu - **to emerge:** xuất hiện - **fatally wounded:** bị tử thương - **a dispute:** tranh chấp - **tribe:** bộ lạc - **to war:** gây chiến - **circumnavigation:** chuyến đi vòng quanh (bằng đường biển)

- | | | | |
|------------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| 6. A. nation | B. native | C. national | D. nationality |
| 7. A. worked | B. went | C. left | D. looked |
| 8. A. team | B. band | C. pack | D. crew |
| 9. A. navigate | B. travel | C. patrol | D. land |
| 10. A. called | B. ordered | C. named | D. memorized |
| 11. A. At | B. Upon | C. In | D. By |
| 12. A. after | B. then | C. ago | D. later |
| 13. A. involved | B. entangled | C. mixed | D. related |
| 14. A. finishing | B. fulfilling | C. completing | D. succeeding |
| 15. A. at | B. around | C. through | D. on |

1. WRITING

Write complete sentences in double comparison, using these cues.

6. the journey / long / the ticket / expensive

.....

7. you travel / far / you pay / much

.....

8. you get / old / it becomes / difficult / to find / a job

.....

49. you are/ selfish / you have / few / friends

50. my wait / last / long / my patience / wear / thin

II. Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

51. How will the company be doing ten years farther on?

52. She looks more pretty in that dress!

53. What's the tallest mountain in the United States?

54. Mum spends more little money than Dad.

55. Her eyes are rounder than my sister's.

ĐÁP ÁN

A. PHONETICS

1. B

2. C

3. C

4. B

5. D

II.

6. A

7. B

8. C

9. D

10. C

B. LANGUAGE

11. B

12. A

13. B

14. A

15. B 16. B

17. A

18. B

19. C

20. A

21. C 22. B

23. D

24. B

25. D

26. B

27. D 28. B

29. C

30. A

C. READING

I.

31. D

32. B

33. C

34. D

35. C

II. Cloze-Text

36. B

37. C

38. D

39. A

40. C

41. B

42. D

43. A

44. C

45. D

D. WRITING

I. 46. The longer the journey (is), the more expensive the ticket (is).

47. The further you travel the more you pay.

48. The older you get / old / the more difficult it becomes to find a job.

49. The more selfish you are, the fewer friends you have.

50. The longer my wait lasts, the thinner my patience wears.

II. Error Correction.

51. farther ⇒ further

52. more pretty ⇒ prettier

53. tallest ⇒ highest

54. more little ⇒ less

55. rounder ⇒ round [Such adjectives as **round**, **square**, **perfect** ... have NO comparative form]

Unit 16

HISTORICAL PLACES

READING

Before You Read

Match the pictures with the names of the countries they belong to.

Đáp án

- Picture a: China.
- Picture b: Vietnam
- Picture c: Japan
- Picture d: Cambodia

Reading Text

Bài dịch gợi ý

Sau khi được thành lập là thủ đô của nước Nhật Bản vào năm 794, Kyoto trở thành cứ điểm mới của hoàng gia Nhật, và nó phát triển thành trung tâm văn hóa của Nhật Bản trong hơn một ngàn năm.

Với hơn 1,600 chùa Phật giáo, 400 đền thờ, nhiều cung điện, và hàng chục vườn hoa trắng lily, Kyoto được xếp hạng một trong những thành phố đậm nét văn hóa nhất trên thế giới. Kyoto cũng nổi tiếng nhờ những lễ hội nhiều màu sắc. Hàng năm tại đây vẫn tổ chức kỷ niệm lễ tấn phong ngôi vị hoàng đế và những sự kiện quốc gia thu hút khác.

Từ khi kinh đô được di dời về Tokyo vào năm 1868, Kyoto đã thay đổi là một thành phố hiện đại chịu ảnh hưởng nền văn hóa Tây phương. Chính quyền Nhật Bản nhận thấy cần phải bảo vệ các tài sản quốc gia vô giá nên các di tích lịch sử và văn hóa ở Kyoto và những vùng lân cận đã được chăm sóc và tu dưỡng đúng mức.

Thực vậy, một nhóm gồm 17 di tích lịch sử đã được đăng ký là Di sản Thế giới vào năm 1993.

Ở vùng đồi núi phía đông bắc cạnh lưu vực sông Nara, cách Osaka 40 ki-lô-mét về hướng đông, là thành phố Nara. Mặc dù thành phố được chính thức đổi tên là Heijo-kyo khi trở thành thủ đô nước Nhật vào năm 710, người Nhật ưa gọi nó là thủ đô Nara, do vị trí của nó. Cả ngành kinh doanh và nghệ thuật đã khởi sắc ở Nara cho đến năm 794, khi thủ đô di dời đến Heiankyo (Kyoto). Ngày nay Nara được nhắc đến như cố đô của Nhật Bản, và mặc dù đã đổi vị thế, nó vẫn là một trong những thành phố được nhiều người đến tham quan nhất ở Nhật. Vẻ đẹp tiềm ẩn, giá trị lịch sử, bầu không khí của một nước Nhật xưa mà Nara còn giữ được, đã khiến Nara thành một trong những điểm sáng của công nghệ du lịch Nhật Bản.

a) Choose the best title for the text.

Đáp án

(2) Ancient Capitals of Japan.

b) Vocabulary. Find the words in the text with the following meanings

Đáp án

1. Extremely good (like in fairy tales)	Fabulous
2. Founding (n.)	Establishment
3. A ceremony to show that a king or queen starts his/her rule	Enthronement
4. The act of keeping something in good condition	Maintenance
5. Things that are owned by somebody or by a nation	Properties
6. Develop highly	flourish

c) Comprehension questions.

Đáp án gợi ý

1. Because it was the capital of Japan for over a thousand years.
2. Besides its colorful festivals, many ceremonies related to important state events in the past are regularly held in Kyoto.
3. Yes, it has. The historical sites in Kyoto have been properly protected and preserved because the Japanese government recognizes the need to protect its invaluable properties.
4. 84 years.
5. Nara's rich history and the atmosphere of an ancient Japan.

d) Work in groups of four. Talk about what you know about Hue, the former capital of Viet Nam.

Đáp án gợi ý

Học sinh có thể tham khảo trích đoạn sau từ Wikipedia English.

Huế is the capital city of Thừa Thiên –Huế province, Vietnam. Between 1802 and 1945, it was the imperial capital of the Nguyễn Dynasty. As such, it is well known for its monuments and architecture. Its population stands at about 340,000 people.

The city is located in central Vietnam on the banks of the Sông Hương (Hương River), just a few miles inland from the Biển Đông. It is about 540 km (335 mi.) south of the national capital of Hanoi and about 644 km (400 mi) north of Hồ Chí Minh City, the country's largest city formerly known as Saigon.

Huế is perhaps best known for its historic monuments, which have earned it a place in the UNESCO's World Heritage Sites. The seat of the Nguyễn emperors was in the Citadel, which occupies a large, walled area on the north side of the river. Inside the citadel was a forbidden city where only the

concubines, emperors, and those close enough to them were granted access, the punishment for trespassing being death. Today, little of the forbidden city remains, though reconstruction efforts are in progress to maintain it as a tourist attraction as a view of the history of Huế.

Roughly along the Perfume River from Huế lie myriad other monuments, including the tombs of several emperors such as Minh Mang, Khai Dinh, Tu Duc, and others. Also notable is the Thiên Mụ pagoda, located not far from the city centre along the river, the largest pagoda in Huế and chosen as the official symbol of the city.

The Huế Museum of Royal Fine Arts on 3 Le Truc Street also maintains a collection of various artifacts from the city.

LISTENING

) Match the words / phrases with the corresponding pictures.

Đáp án

Picture a	Court Music
Picture b	The Royal Citadel
Picture c	Artisan and handicrafts
Picture d	The Perfume River
Picture e	A mandarin

) Listen to a tour guide giving some information about transportation in Hue and choose the correct answers.

Đáp án

- . D Phu Bai Airport is about 14 kilometers south of the center of Hue.
- . C Tourists can travel around the Royal Citadel by cyclo.
- . C You pay US\$ 5 for a boat tour on the Perfume River.
- . A Hue is about one thousand kilometers from Ho Chi Minh City
- . B There are flight connections to Hanoi and Ho Chi Minh City every day.

) Listen to a tour guide talking to visitors about some attractions and features of Hue and write short answers to the questions below.

Đáp án

- . 143 years.
- . Yes, they are.
- . On the Perfume River.
- . Hue's traditional dishes served in restaurants featuring court music.
- . Skillful handicraft works.

SPEAKING

Giving Explanations of an Event

a) Answer questions about Hoi An Ancient Town.

Đáp án gợi ý

1. Hoi An is in Central Viet Nam, in Quang Nam Province.
2. Because it still keeps many features of an old town, and is now the World Cultural Heritage Site.
3. Because it was built a very long time ago, around the 16th century.

b) Group work: Talk about Hoi An Ancient Town based on given facts and figures.

Đáp án gợi ý

A: Where's Hoi An Ancient Town located?

B: It is in Central Viet Nam, about 30 km south of Da Nang.

C: What made it an important part of Viet Nam?

D: Well, it used to be Viet Nam's major seaport.

A: It did? When was that?

B: In the 16th, 17th, and 18th centuries.

C: What makes it an attractive town now?

D: It has the features of an old seaport. The streets around the town are very narrow, and they are lined with low tiled-roof houses or moss-walled buildings.

B: And there are old pagodas and other places of worship bearing Japanese and Chinese cultures.

c) Talk about the historical or cultural event that you know well.

Đáp án gợi ý

On December 20th 1960, the National Front for Liberation of South Vietnam was established, aiming to unify the country. The Vietnamese people bravely and firmly stood up to fight for peace and unification of the country. They won numerous victories in the northern as well as the southern part of the country. In the Spring of 1975, the patriotic armed forces of Vietnam swept across the country in the great general offensive and overthrew the Saigon government. On the 30th of April in 1975, the southern part of Vietnam was liberated and the country was united as one. Since then Vietnam has gained its independence and liberty.

WRITING

Describing Information Using a Table

a) Tell your partner about your neighborhood or hometown.

Đáp án gợi ý

- 1 I live in Dalat, a city about 300 kilometers north of Ho Chi Minh City. It's a small city of about two hundred thousand inhabitants. Dalat is famous for its mild weather which is cool all year round, and for its picturesque,

romantic landscape. Flowers can be found everywhere in the city, in the parks, in the gardens, along the city streets and on many balconies. That's why Dalat is called The City of Flowers.

I live in a small village about 40 kilometers north of Da Nang. It's a small community of about one thousand inhabitants. Most of the people in my village are farmers who own small farms. They live on their farm produce. My parents own an orange orchard. There are tombs of my grandparents in the orchard.

- b) Use the given facts and figures to write about Ha Noi, the capital of Viet Nam, and about Ho Chi Minh City.

áp án gợi ý

In 1010, Ha Noi was named Thang Long by King Ly Thai To – its founder. Thanks to its strategic location at the heart of the Red River Delta, Ha Noi has been developed greatly. Now it is an important political, economic, and cultural center of Viet Nam with the population of about 4 million. The site of the Old Citadel in Ha Noi is an important historical vestige. Ha Noi also witnessed the starting of the August Revolution. Visitors to Ha Noi are attracted by the Old Citadel, Ba Dinh Square, Tran Quoc Pagoda, West Lake, and many other places of interest.

- . In 1698, the city was founded by Nguyen Huu Canh, and named Saigon. Since 1975 it has been renamed after Uncle Ho, the great leader of the Vietnamese people. Located on a large bend of Saigon River, Ho Chi Minh City is now an over-crowded, dynamic city with a population of over eight million. This is a cosmopolitan city, an economic and cultural centre of Vietnam. The lifestyle and architecture in Ho Chi Minh reflect the culture of the Southern part of Vietnam, as well as the Chinese and Western ones. In the city center, one can find Western-style structures such as Reunification Hall, City Hall, City Theater, City Post Office, State Bank Office, City People's Court, Notre-Dame Cathedral, Hotel Majestic. Some places worth visiting are Ben Thanh Market, Chinatown and Ho Chi Minh Museum.

thú thích từ ngữ:

Reunification Hall	<i>Dinh Thống Nhất</i>
City Hall	<i>Ủy ban Nhân dân Thành phố</i>
City Theater	<i>Nhà hát Thành phố</i>
City Post Office	<i>Bưu điện Thành phố</i>
State Bank Office	<i>Ngân hàng Nhà nước</i>
City People's Court	<i>Tòa án Nhân dân Thành phố</i>
Notre-Dame Cathedral	<i>Nhà Thờ Đức Bà</i>

LANGUAGE FOCUS

Word study

Adjectives Ending in *-al* or *-ical*

NOUNS	ADJECTIVES
royalty	royal
architecture	architectural
coast	coastal
history	historical
culture	cultural
center	central

Complete the conversation with the adjectives from the box above:

Tourist What can I see in Central Vietnam?

Guide You can enjoy yourself at the beautiful beaches of many of the coastal towns. Besides, you can go to Hue and visit the royal tombs of the kings of the Nguyen Dynasty.

Tourist I've heard of Hoi An. Is it an interesting place?

Guide Yes. It's an ancient town with many Japanese and Chinese cultural and architectural features.

Tourist What other places should I visit?

Guide Why don't you go to Ha Noi? You can find many historical sites, like the Old Citadel and Sword Lake.

Grammar

a) Use of *the* with Geographical Names

Use THE with	Don't use THE with
<i>Oceans, rivers, seas, gulfs, plural lakes</i> The Atlantic Ocean, the Red Sea, the Persian Gulf, the Great Lakes	<i>Singular lakes</i> Lake Geneva, Lake Hoàn Kiếm
<i>Mountains</i> The Truong Son Range, the Himalayas	<i>Mounts</i> Mount Everest, Mount Fuji
<i>Countries or groups of countries with more than one word (except Great Britain)</i> The United States, the United Kingdom	<i>Countries preceded by New or an adjective such as a direction</i> New Zealand, North Korea <i>Countries with only one word</i> Vietnam, China <i>Continents</i> Asia, Europe, Australia <i>States</i> California, Florida, Alabama

Write *the* in the blanks where it is needed

Đáp án

You'll take a flight across the Pacific Ocean, and your first stop in the United States in San Francisco, California, on the West Coast. Next, you'll fly to the Rocky Mountains, and then to Grand Canyon National Park and see Mount Crumbell. From there, you'll fly on to New York, where you can take another plane to Europe.

o) Make complete sentences with the following prompts.

Đáp án

1. *The* Nile flows through Egypt.
2. Washington, D. C. is the capital of *the* United States.
3. Ha Noi is the capital of *the* Socialist Republic of Viet Nam.
4. *The* Netherlands is in Europe.
5. Jack goes skiing in *the* Alps every winter.
6. There were tidal waves on *the* South Coast of *the* Pacific Ocean last year.

o) Sentences with *Although* / *Even though*, or *But* and *In spite of* / *Despite*

Fill in the blanks with although / even though, but, or in spite of / despite.

Đáp án

- | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. although / even though | 3. but |
| 2. in spite of / despite | 4. although / even though |

l) Join each pair of sentences with the word(s) in parentheses.

Đáp án

1. We took that package tour despite its high cost.
2. We couldn't get tickets to the Old Citadel even though we had been lining up for an hour.
3. Although many parts of the Old Citadel were destroyed, archeologists could find valuable relics.
4. In spite of feeling tired, we went on exploring Hoi An Ancient Town.
5. Even though the sign was right in front of him, he didn't notice it.
6. Despite being old, the house looks very attractive.
7. In spite of the heavy traffic, we could get to the airport in time for our flight home.

BÀI TẬP CÙNG CỐ

UNIT 16

A. PHONETICS

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others in the same line.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. A. <u>its</u> | B. <u>his</u> | C. <u>hers</u> | D. <u>theirs</u> |
| 2. A. <u>changed</u> | B. <u>ranked</u> | C. <u>registered</u> | D. <u>enthroned</u> |
| 3. A. <u>capital</u> | B. <u>palace</u> | C. <u>artisan</u> | D. <u>anniversary</u> |
| 4. A. <u>maintenance</u> | B. <u>status</u> | C. <u>dragon</u> | D. <u>break</u> |
| 5. A. <u>English</u> | B. <u>history</u> | C. <u>city</u> | D. <u>shrine</u> |

II. Choose the word whose stress pattern is different from the rest in each group.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|--------------|----------------|---------------|
| 6. A. after | B. before | C. over | D. into |
| 7. A. pagoda | B. tradition | C. artisan | D. attraction |
| 8. A. capital | B. location | C. maintenance | D. government |
| 9. A. fabulous | B. colorful | C. historic | D. cultural |
| 10. A. Historical | B. imperial | C. industrial | D. energetic |

B GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY

a) Give the corresponding adjectives ending in -al or -ical. The first one has been done for you.

NOUNS	ADJECTIVES
government	governmental
11. post	
12. biology	
13. geography	
14. influence	
15. tradition	

b) Fill in each blank with an appropriate compound adjective from exercise (a)

1. In this unit, we've learnt how to use 'the' with _____ names.
1. My brother works for a non-_____ organization.
1. _____ applications must be received by December 20th.
1. World Leaders attending the APEC 2006 Summit in Hanoi looked great in their 'áo dài', the Vietnamese _____ costume.
2. I think that Bill Gates is quite a(n) _____ businessman.

c) Write the in the blanks where it is needed

I travel all over the world on business. You know what business travel is like: up at dawn to catch a plane; breakfast in ____ (21) London, lunch in ____ (22) New York. When you're in the sky, you see only snow in ____ (23) Arctic or ____ (24) Greenland. You have glimpses of ____ (25) Andes or ____ (26) Pacific. Tomorrow I'm going on a business trip to ____ (27) United Arab Emirates; then to ____ (28) Manila in ____ (29) Philippines before visiting ____ (30) Vietnam.

C. READING COMPREHENSION

Read the following passage and do the tasks that appear below it.

CỦ CHI TUNNELS

About seventy kilometers northwest of Ho Chi Minh City is the town of Củ Chi, one of the most famous battlegrounds of the Vietnam War. It is here that the Vietnamese people built the main sections of tunnels that were vital to their victory over the U.S. imperialists in 1975. These tunnels are fascinating to visit. They are better described as underground towns rather than just tunnels. The network reached several stories deep and housed up to 10,000 people who rarely saw daylight for years, coming out only at night to tend their crops. The tunnels included first aid posts, storage rooms for weapons and food, kitchens, dorms and even classrooms and small theatres. Countless couples were married and had children underground. What makes the tunnels even more amazing is that they were dug with hand tools and yet had primitive technologies like underground trap doors and vents to disperse cooking smoke.

Adapted from: <http://www.hack1996.com/cuchi.html>

a) Match each word in column A with its equivalent in column B

There is one extra definition in column B.

Column A	Column B
31. tunnel	a. a system of connected things
32. vital	b. sleeping-room
33. network	c. underground passage
34. tend	d. very important, essential
35. dorm	e. go into different directions, spread out and disappear
36. disperse	f. be likely to behave in a certain way
	g. take care of

b) State whether these statements are true or false according to the passage

17. Củ Chi Tunnels are an underground network northwest of Ho Chi Minh City.
18. A lot of modern equipment and technology were used to dig Củ Chi tunnels.
19. Thousands of people lived and worked in Củ Chi underground system.
20. Crops were grown and tended in Củ Chi tunnels.

D. WRITING

Write a short description of Mui Ne with the following prompts.

41. Mui Ne/ coastal resort town / Binh Thuan Province, Vietnam.
42. Tourism / transform / Mui Ne / a resort destination / since 1995,
43. Tourists / visit / view / total solar eclipse of October 24, 1995.
44. Since then/ resorts/ be opened/
45. Attract/ foreign and domestic investors.
46. Some well-known resorts/ Phú Hải Resort, Swiss Village Resort, Ocean Beach Resort, etc.
47. Mui Ne Beach / one / most popular tropical beaches.
48. Strong sea breezes / make / very popular / kite surfing, windsurfing
49. Tourist season / December to May.
50. Average temperature / 27C / climate / hot, dry/ most of the year.

ĐÁP ÁN UNIT 16

A. PHONETICS

1. A. its	2B. ranked	3. C. artisan	4. C. dragon	5. D. shrine
6. B. before	7. C. artisan	8. B. location	9. C. historic	10. D. energy

B. GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY

- a) Give the corresponding adjectives ending in -al or -ical. The first one has been done for you.

NOUNS	ADJECTIVES
government	governmental
11. post	postal
12. biology	biological
13. geography	geographical
14. influence	influential
15. tradition	traditional

- b) Fill in each blank with an appropriate compound adjective from exercise (a)

- | | | |
|------------------|----------------------|------------|
| 16. geographical | 17. non-governmental | 18. Postal |
| 19. traditional | 20. influential | |

- c) Write the in the blanks where it is needed

I travel all over the world on business. You know what business travel is like up at dawn to catch the plane; breakfast in (21) London, lunch in (22) New York

When you're in the sky, you see only snow in (23) the Arctic or (24) Greenland. You have glimpses of (25) the Andes or (26) the Pacific. Tomorrow I'm going on a business trip to (27) the United Arab Emirates; then to (28) Manila in the (29) Philippines before visiting (30) Vietnam.

C. READING COMPREHENSION

a) Matching.

- | | |
|--------------|--|
| 31. tunnel | c. underground passage |
| 32. vital | d. very important, essential |
| 33. network | a. a system of connected things |
| 34. tend | g. take care of |
| 35. dorm | b. sleeping-room |
| 36. disperse | e. go into different directions, spread out and disappear. |

b) State whether these statements are *true* or *false* according to the passage.

37. T Củ Chi Tunnels are an underground network northwest of Ho Chi Minh City.
38. F → Primitive equipment and technology were used to dig the tunnels.
39. T Thousands of people lived and worked in Củ Chi underground network
40. F → Crops were grown and tended outside the tunnels.

D. WRITING

Đáp án gợi ý

- (41) **Mui Ne** is a coastal resort town in Binh Thuan Province, Vietnam.
(42) Tourism has transformed Mui Ne into a resort destination since 1995, (43) when many tourists visited the town to view the total solar eclipse of October 24, 1995.
(44) Since then, many resorts have been opened, (45) attracting both foreign and domestic investors.
(46) Some well-known resorts are such as Phú Hải Resort, Swiss Village Resort and Ocean Beach Resort
(47) Mui Ne Beach is now one of the most popular tropical beaches.
(48) Strong sea breezes make it very popular for kite surfing and windsurfing.
(49) The tourist season is from December to May.
(50) The average temperature is 27C, and the climate is hot and dry for most of the year.

CONSOLIDATION 4

Units 13 - 16

LISTENING COMPREHENSION

a. Listen to the talk about New York State and then complete the statements below.

Đáp án:

- | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. mountains; big cities | 3. largest; the United States |
| 2. eleven | 4. The Big Apple |

b. You will hear short conversations between two people. After each conversation, you will hear a question about it. After you hear the question, read the four possible answers and check (✓) the best one.

Đáp án:

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. C | 2. A | 3. C | 4. B | 5. B |
|------|------|------|------|------|

VOCABULARY

a. Choose the word from the box that can best complete each of the following sentences or exchanges.

ANSWERS.

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. appreciative | 6. hosted |
| 2. appeal | 7. status |
| 3. dramatic | 8. leading |
| 4. spiritual | 9. origin |
| 5. tournament | 10. flourishing |

b. Choose the word or phrase that best completes each sentence or exchange.

Đáp án:

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 11. C | 13. D | 15. C | 17. B | 19. A |
| 12. D | 14. A | 16. C | 18. C | 20. B |

GRAMMAR AND STRUCTURE

a. Choose the word or phrase that best completes each sentence or exchange.

Đáp án:

- | | | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. B | 2. C | 3. B | 4. B | 5. A | 6. C | 7. B |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|

b. Fill in each blank with the correct form of the verb in parentheses. (You may use the to-base form, the present participle, or the past participle.)

Đáp án:

- | | |
|-------------|----------------|
| 8. exciting | 12. surprising |
| 9. excited | 13. amazed |
| 10. to host | 14. to suit |
| 11. pleased | |

2. Match the clauses in A with those in B, using *although* or *so that*.

Đáp án:

- 15. e ... so that he could further his education.
- 16. a ... although he had trained very hard.
- 17. b ... so that they can see the ancient town.
- 18. d ... so that they can learn to be cooperative.
- 19. f ... although it rained heavily.
- 20. c ... although they made great efforts to defend their goal.

READING

Read the following text and do the tasks that follow.

Bài dịch gợi ý:

Sydney, Australia.

Sydney, thủ đô của New South Wales, nổi tiếng vì Nhà hát Nhạc kịch Sydney, Cầu Cảng Sydney, và, dĩ nhiên cả Cảng Sydney.

Lịch sử

Vào năm 1770, thuyền trưởng James Cook, người được chính quyền Anh phái đi, đã là người đầu tiên khám phá ra vùng đất mới đặt tên là New South Wales. Những người định cư đầu tiên ở đó đa số là những kẻ phạm pháp ở Anh, và tiếng Anh luôn là ngôn ngữ chính sử dụng tại Úc. Tuy vậy những người định cư mới này rất ít coi trọng truyền thống; họ sẵn sàng tạo từ mới và sử dụng những từ cũ theo kiểu Úc của họ. Sydney bây giờ là một nơi pha trộn đủ mọi cư dân khắp nơi trên thế giới.

Các điểm du lịch

Bất cứ ai đến Sydney đều có ấn tượng tốt về những bãi biển đẹp dọc theo bờ biển. Họ cũng có thể tham gia những chuyến đi dài ngày đến các hang động đá vôi hoặc các chuyến du ngoạn trên sông. Nhưng thú vị nhất có lẽ là chuyến đi thăm những công viên không xa trung tâm thành phố lắm. Toạ lạc ở vùng ngoại ô phía nam của Sydney, công viên Royal National là công viên quốc gia nổi đứng hàng thứ hai trên thế giới. Du khách có thể đến đây bằng tàu lửa hoặc bằng tàu thủy. Họ có thể tham gia bữa tiệc ăn thức ăn nướng ngoài trời hoặc đi picnic, bơi lội, đi bộ dọc theo những con đường mòn hẹp, hoặc thích thú ngắm nhìn các loài thực, động vật độc nhất vô nhị tại đây. Một công viên khác là công viên quốc gia Ku-ring-gai-Chase ở phía bắc của Sydney. Công viên này còn lưu giữ những chòm sa thạch, 900 loài hoa và chim muông thu rừng hoang dã gây nhiều ấn tượng.

Thể thao

Người Úc luôn yêu thích thể thao. Gần như 60 phần trăm cư dân Úc tham gia ít nhất một môn thể thao hoặc một hoạt động thể chất. Môn thể thao được ưa chuộng nhất là đi bộ, bơi lội, aerobics, gôn và tennis. Một dẫn chứng cho sự

thành công về lãnh vực thể thao của nước Úc là các vận động viên Úc tại Thế Vận Hội Olympic Sydney 2000 và Thế vận hội Paralympic của người khuyết tật đã đoạt được 149 huy chương. Thế Vận Hội Paralympic là thế vận hội dành cho người khuyết tật, được tổ chức cùng một năm với Thế Vận Hội Olympic. Thế Vận Hội Paralympic lần thứ 11 Sydney 2000 có khoảng 18 sự kiện và đạt được 300 kỷ lục thế giới và kỷ lục Paralympic.

a. The following statements can be true (T) or false (F). Check (✓) the appropriate boxes. Then correct the false statements.

Đáp án:

- | | T | F |
|----|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. | ☒ | ☐ |
| 2. | ☐ | ☒ |
| 3. | ☒ | ☐ |
| 4. | ☒ | ☐ |

- | | T | F |
|----|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 5. | ☐ | ☒ |
| 6. | ☐ | ☒ |
| 7. | ☒ | ☐ |
| 8. | ☐ | ☒ |

b. Complete the following sentences with the correct forms of the words in parentheses.

Đáp án:

- | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. discovery | 5. popularity |
| 2. readiness | 6. participation; participation |
| 3. impression; impressive | 7. disabled |
| 4. preserve | |

c. Answer the following questions.

Đáp án:

8. Sydney Opera House; Sydney Harbor Bridge; Sydney Harbor; the beaches; the limestone cave; the Royal National Park; Ku-ring-gai Chase National Park.
9. "Lawbreakers" means people who do not obey the law.
10. Royal National Park; Ku-ring-gai Chase National Park.
11. About 60% of the Australian population participates in at least one sport or physical activity; its athletes' participation in the Sydney 2000 Olympic and Paralympic Games; a total of 149 medals gained in the Paralympics 2000.

WRITING

Describing Information Using a Table

Work in groups of four. Complete the table with facts and figures about Hoi An Ancient Town based on your background knowledge.

Đáp án gợi ý:

Hoi An Ancient Town	
1. Location	• on Thu Bồn River • 30 km south of Da Nang

2. Historical and / or cultural features	• major trading centre (16th, 17th centuries) • important port for Dutch, Portuguese, Italian, Chinese, Japanese and other merchants vessels from the far East
3. Current status	• World Cultural Heritage Site • tourist destination
4. Tourist attractions	• Narrow streets • Japanese Covered Bridge. • Moss-walled buildings • Old pagodas, temples, and other places of worship • Low tiled-roof houses of Chinese and Japanese styles • Features of ancient seaport. • the Assembly Hall of Cantonese Congregation • Tan Ky House

MỤC LỤC

LỜI NÓI ĐẦU	1
UNIT 1. SCHOOL TALKS	1
BÀI TẬP CÙNG CỐ.....	1
ĐÁP ÁN	1
Unit 2. PEOPLE'S BACKGROUNDS	1
BÀI TẬP CÙNG CỐ.....	2
ĐÁP ÁN	2
Unit 3. DAILY ACTIVITIES.....	2
BÀI TẬP CÙNG CỐ.....	3
ĐÁP ÁN	3
Unit 4. SPECIAL EDUCATION	3
BÀI TẬP CÙNG CỐ.....	4
ĐÁP ÁN	5
CONSOLIDATION 1	5
UNIT 5. TECHNOLOGY.....	5
BÀI TẬP CÙNG CỐ.....	6
ĐÁP ÁN	7
UNIT 6. SCHOOL OUTDOOR ACTIVITIES.....	7
BÀI TẬP CÙNG CỐ.....	8
ĐÁP ÁN	8
UNIT 7. THE MASS MEDIA.....	8
BÀI TẬP CÙNG CỐ.....	10
ĐÁP ÁN	10
Unit 8. LIFE IN THE COMMUNITY.....	10
BÀI TẬP CÙNG CỐ.....	11
ĐÁP ÁN	11
CONSOLIDATION 2	12
Unit 9. UNDERSEA WORLD	12
BÀI TẬP CÙNG CỐ.....	13
Unit 10. CONSERVATION	13
BÀI TẬP CÙNG CỐ.....	14
UNIT 11. NATIONAL PARKS.....	15
BÀI TẬP CÙNG CỐ.....	15

Unit 12. MUSIC	161
BÀI TẬP CÙNG CỐ.....	168
CONSOLIDATION 3	173
Unit 13. THEATRE AND MOVIES	176
BÀI TẬP CÙNG CỐ.....	183
ĐÁP ÁN	185
Unit 14. THE WORLD CUP	187
BÀI TẬP CÙNG CỐ.....	195
ĐÁP ÁN	198
Unit 15. PACIFIC RIM	200
BÀI TẬP CÙNG CỐ.....	208
Unit 16. HISTORICAL PLACES	213
BÀI TẬP CÙNG CỐ.....	220
ĐÁP ÁN	222
CONSOLIDATION 4	224

NHÀ XUẤT BẢN ĐẠI HỌC QUỐC GIA HÀ NỘI

16 Hàng Chuối - Hai Bà Trưng - Hà Nội

Điện thoại: (04) 9724852; (04) 9724770; Fax: (04) 9714899

Chịu trách nhiệm xuất bản :

Giám đốc : PHÙNG QUỐC BẢO

Tổng biên tập : PHẠM THỊ TRÂM

Biên tập : VÂN HÀ

Sửa bài : NGUYỄN THỊ HÀ

Trình bày bìa : QUỐC VIỆT

Đối tác liên kết xuất bản:

CÔNG TY SÁCH - TBGD ĐỨC TRÍ

SÁCH LIÊN KẾT

HỌC TỐT TIẾNG ANH 10 (CHƯƠNG TRÌNH NÂNG CAO)

Mã số: 2L-309ĐH2010

In 2.000 cuốn, khổ 16x24 cm tại Công ty In Song Nguyên.

Số xuất bản: 566-2010/CXB/14-92/ĐHQGHN, ngày 14/06/2010

Quyết định xuất bản số: 309 LK-XH/QĐ-NXB ĐHQGHN

In xong và nộp lưu chiểu quý III năm 2010.